

<b>DOCKETED</b>	
<b>Docket Number:</b>	24-OPT-04
<b>Project Title:</b>	Potentia-Viridi Battery Energy Storage System
<b>TN #:</b>	258254
<b>Document Title:</b>	Preliminary Erosion and Sediment Control Plan
<b>Description:</b>	This Plan is a high-level programmatic document with recommendations for necessary construction best management practices (BMPs) within the project where applicable
<b>Filer:</b>	Jennifer Dorgan
<b>Organization:</b>	Allen Matkins Leck Gamble Mallory & Nats
<b>Submitter Role:</b>	Applicant Representative
<b>Submission Date:</b>	7/31/2024 6:03:10 PM
<b>Docketed Date:</b>	8/1/2024

---

# **Appendix 1N**

## Erosion and Sediment Control Plan



---

# Erosion and Sediment Control Plan

## **Potentia-Viridi Battery Energy Storage Project Alameda County, California**

---

**JULY 2024**

*Prepared for:*

**LEVY ALAMEDA, LLC**

*Project Applicant*

155 Wellington Street W., Suite 2930  
Toronto, Ontario M5V 3H1, Canada

**CALIFORNIA ENERGY COMMISSION**

*Lead Agency*

715 P Street,  
Sacramento, California 95814

*Prepared by:*

**DUDEK**

605 Third Street  
Encinitas, California 92024





---

# Table of Contents

SECTION	PAGE NO.
Acronyms and Abbreviations.....	iii
1 Introduction .....	1
1.1 Purpose .....	1
1.2 Project Description .....	1
1.3 Project Location.....	1
1.4 Project Components.....	1
1.5 Project Schedule.....	2
2 Drainage .....	5
2.1 Existing Conditions .....	5
2.2 Existing Stormwater Surface Flow.....	5
2.3 Proposed Drainage Conditions .....	5
2.4 Existing Soils.....	6
2.5 Climate.....	6
3 Best Management Practices .....	7
3.1 Schedule .....	7
3.2 Erosion and Sediment Control.....	8
3.2.1 Erosion-Control BMPs.....	8
3.2.2 Sediment-Control BMPs .....	10
3.2.3 Tracking-Control BMPs .....	11
3.2.4 Wind Erosion-Control BMPs .....	12
3.3 Post-Construction Stormwater Management BMPs.....	12
4 BMP Inspection, Maintenance, and Inspection Plan.....	15
4.1 BMP Inspection and Maintenance .....	15
4.2 Inspection Plan.....	15
4.2.1 Requirements.....	16
4.2.2 Safety.....	16
4.2.3 BMP Inspections .....	16
4.2.4 Qualifying Precipitation Event Inspections.....	17
5 Training.....	19
5.1 Overview.....	19
5.2 Training Requirements.....	19
5.2.1 Employee & Subcontractor Training.....	19
6 Responsible Parties and Operators .....	21

6.1 Responsible Parties..... 21

6.2 Contractor List ..... 21

7 References ..... 23

**TABLES**

Table 1. BMP Implementation Schedule.....7

Table 2. Erosion-Control BMPs .....8

Table 3. Sediment Control BMPs..... 10

Table 4. Tracking Control BMPs..... 12

Table 5. Wind Erosion Control BMPs..... 12

Table 6. Non-Structural Source Control BMPs..... 13

Table 7. Structural Source Control BMPs..... 13

Table 8. List of Responsible Parties ..... 21

Table 9. List of Contractors ..... 21

**APPENDICES**

A Site Maps

B Schedule

C CASQA Fact Sheets

D Completed Inspections

E Inspection Form

F Weather Reports

G Training Log

---

# Acronyms and Abbreviations

Acronym/Abbreviation	Definition
AC	Alternating Current
Amsl	At mean sea level
BESS	Battery Energy Storage
BMP	Best Management Practice
CASQA	California Stormwater Quality Association
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
cy	Cubic yards
DC	Direct Current
ECP	Erosion and Sediment Control Plan
Gen-tie	Generation tie
HVAC	Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning
kV	Kilovolt
LFP	lithium iron phosphate
LID	Low Impact Development
LRP	Legally Responsible Person
MW	megawatt
MWh/y	megawatt- hours per year
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
O&M	Operations and maintenance
PCS	Power Conversion System
PG&E	Pacific Gas and Electric
POCO	Point of Change of Ownership
POI	Point of Interconnection
POP	Probability of Precipitation
Project	Potentia-Viridi Battery Energy Storage System
QPF	Quantitative Precipitation Forecast
QPE	Qualifying Precipitation Event
QSD	Qualified SWPPP Developer
SWPPP	Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan
TBD	To be determined

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

---

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Purpose

The purpose of this preliminary erosion control plan (ECP) is to provide a high-level programmatic document with recommendations for necessary construction best management practices (BMPs) within the project where applicable. The preliminary ECP will include references to the CASQA BMP handbooks where applicable. The preliminary ECP may be used in the future development of the detailed Erosion Control Plans when the project reaches the stage when engineering design plan sheets are available.

## 1.2 Project Description

Levy Alameda, LLC (Applicant), a wholly owned subsidiary of Obra Maestra Renewables, LLC, proposes to construct, operate, and eventually repower or decommission the 400-megawatt (MW) Potentia-Viridi Battery Energy Storage System (Project) on approximately 85 acres in eastern Alameda County. The primary components of the Project include an up to 3,200 megawatt-hour (MWh) battery energy storage system (BESS) facility, an operations and maintenance (O&M) building, a project substation, a 500 kilovolt (kV) overhead intertie transmission (gen-tie) line, and interconnection facilities within the Pacific Gas and Electric (PG&E) owned and operated Tesla Substation.

The Project would draw electricity from the power grid to charge and store electrical energy and discharge back to the power grid when the stored energy is needed. The Project would provide several benefits to the power grid, including reducing the need to operate natural gas power plants to balance intermittent renewable generation and serving as an additional capacity resource that would enhance grid reliability. The Project would be remotely operated and monitored year-round and be available to receive or deliver energy 24 hours a day and 365 days a year.

## 1.3 Project Location

The Project site is located at 17257 Patterson Pass Road, Tracy, CA 95377. The property is southwest of Interstate 580 and Interstate 205 on a portion Alameda County Assessor's Parcel Number 99B-7890-002-04. The Project area consists of approximately 70 acres. The gen-tie line would extend southeast from the Project substation, crossing Patterson Pass Rd, and then proceed east to the Tesla Substation. The Project's gen-tie line would be sited on APNs 99B-7890-2-4, 99B-7890-2-6, and 99B-7885-12. The Project site has land use and zoning designation of Agriculture. The area surrounding the Tesla Substation is sparsely developed for residential use, with the nearest residence, which is also owned by the same landowner leasing the area for the Project's gen-tie line, is approximately 1,500 feet southeast of the Project site and 560 feet south of the proposed gen-tie line.

## 1.4 Project Components

Project components include the Battery Energy Storage System (BESS) Enclosures, Power Conversion Systems (PCS), Medium voltage (MV) Collection System, Project Substation, Control Building, and Telecommunications

Facilities, Access Roads, Laydown Yards, Stormwater Facilities and Outfall, Site Security and Fencing, including fire detection system, and an Operations and Maintenance Building. This section provides details of each component.

- **Battery Energy Storage System (BESS).** The energy storage facility would utilize a modular and containerized BESS. The initial Project concept has been developed assuming lithium iron phosphate (LFP) cells. It is anticipated ESS enclosure height will not exceed 12 feet. The structures may also have a heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) system for optimal performance and safety.
- **Power Conversion Systems (PCS).** The PCS would convert electric energy from AC to DC when the energy is transferred from the grid to the battery, and from DC to AC when the energy is transferred from the battery to the grid.
- **Project Substation.** A Project substation is anticipated to be constructed adjacent to the BESS facilities. The power to and from the BESS would be passed through a final interconnection step-up transformer to convert it from 34.5 kV to 500-kV high-voltage for delivery to the PG&E Tesla Substation.
- **Telecommunications Facilities.** Fiber-optic cables will be used to connect the Project site switchyard with the PG&E point of interconnection and to existing fiber-optic lines for remote monitoring. Fiber optic cable may require trenching for installation, or it may be placed on poles or a combination of both.
- **Access Roads.** Access to the Project site would be provided via new private driveways to the north of the site, off of Patterson Pass Road and to the southeast of the site, off of Patterson Pass Road.
- **Laydown Yards.** There would be four laydown yards on the BESS Facility Site. The primary laydown yard would be maintained just north of the central project substation area. This yard would be used during both construction and operation of the BESS facility.
- **Site Security, Lighting, and Fencing.** The Project would be enclosed at the perimeter by a 6-foot to 8-foot-tall security fence. Lighting would only be in areas where it is required for safety, security, or operations. Security cameras will be placed on site and monitored 7 days a week and 24 hours per day.
- **Fire detection system.** Multiple fire detection systems will be installed on-site and within the individual BESS enclosures including an infrared camera system and an onboard battery management system (BMS). In the event of an anomaly, the system will shut down and mitigate the hazard. The BESS enclosures are designed and constructed in such a way that fire would not propagate from one enclosure to a neighboring enclosure in the event of a thermal runaway.
- **Operations and Maintenance Building.** An operations and maintenance (O&M) building would be constructed within the primary laydown yard for the Project's anticipated three full-time operations staff.
- **Generation Tie-Line.** Electrical energy would be transmitted to and from the Project substation to the existing Tesla PG&E Substation through a proposed 500-kV gen-tie line. The gen-tie line would extend southeast from the facility to the Tesla PG&E Substation.

## 1.5 Project Schedule

Initial mobilization and site preparation is anticipated to begin no later than Q1 2026 and testing and commissioning is anticipated to conclude no later than Q2 2028. It is anticipated that construction crews would work 8 to 10 hours per day, with work occurring Monday through Friday. Environmental clearance surveys would be

performed at the Project site prior to commencement of construction activities. Construction activities would include the following:

- **Site preparation.** Prior to construction, environmental clearance surveys would be performed. Erosion and sediment control measures will be installed prior to the start of major earthworks activities. Rough grading and grubbing/vegetation removal would be performed. Detention basins and stormwater facilities would be created for hydrologic control. Stabilized construction entrances and exits would be installed.
- **Site Grading and Civil Work.** Grading is anticipated to include up to approximately 588,018 cubic yards (cy) of cut and up to approximately 344,900 cy of fill, resulting in up to approximately 243,118 cy of export material. The BESS facility site access roads and driveways would be graded, compacted, and surfaced with gravel or aggregate. The project perimeter fence and access gates would then be constructed.
- **Foundations and Underground Equipment Installation.** A grounding grid and underground conduit would be installed below grade beneath the project substation area and BESS components. The main power transformers foundations within the substation area are anticipated to be concrete slab foundations poured into excavations up to 10 feet deep. Foundations for the control building, static masts, other aboveground substation equipment, O&M building, BESS enclosures, PCS units, AC/DC converters, and BESS auxiliary transformers and panels are anticipated to be pile foundations embedded up to 40 feet below ground level. Additional underground work would include trenching for the placement of underground electrical and communications lines.
- **BESS and Project Substation Equipment Installation.** Major equipment would be delivered and offloaded directly into place with a crane or heavy equipment when possible or stored at one of the laydown areas near its permanent location and installed at a later date. Electrical wiring would be installed underground, at-grade, and above ground, depending on the application and location.
- **Gen-Tie Structure Erection.** The transmission structure access path may be bladed, compacted, and surfaced with gravel where necessary to facilitate access. Cast-in-place concrete foundations would be installed. Fiber optic utility poles would be direct embedded in holes up to 8 feet deep.
- **Gen-Tie Stringing and Pulling.** Conductors would be strung between transmission structures and cables would be pulled through one segment of the transmission line at a time.
- **PG&E-Owned Gen-Tie Segment and Interconnection Facilities within Tesla Substation Footprint.** PG&E would construct the segment of the gen-tie between the POCO and the POI within the Tesla Substation, and the fiber optic routes between the POCO and the PG&E control building within the Tesla Substation footprint.
- **Testing and Commissioning.** After installation, equipment will be tested and commissioned. Commissioning work will be completed by qualified personnel.



INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

---

## 2 Drainage

### 2.1 Existing Conditions

Land use with the project is primarily agricultural, which currently consists of fallowed annual grasslands suitable for grazing. The gen-tie line would extend southeast from the Project substation, crossing Patterson Pass Rd, and then proceed east to the Point of Interconnection (POI) at the Tesla Substation.

The Project's gen-tie line would extend from the Project site across Patterson Pass Rd, and over additional agricultural lands surrounding the PG&E Tesla Substation which is located directly to the east. In addition to the PG&E Tesla Substation, the Project site and gen-tie route are surrounded by vacant rural agricultural land, multiple high-voltage transmission lines, rural roads, a railroad line, and immediately east of the Project site is an intermittent "stream/river" named Patterson Run that flows from south to north through the proposed overhead gen-tie alignment.

### 2.2 Existing Stormwater Surface Flow

The project site is hilly and generally slopes from the higher elevations in the south down toward the lower elevations in the north from the highest elevation point at approximately 491 feet above mean sea level (amsl) along the southern border and the lowest elevation is approximately 386 feet amsl in the northeast corner.

Along the gen-tie route, the land slopes downward from approximately 476 feet amsl to approximately 433 feet amsl at the top of bank of Patterson Run on the west side between the BESS and stream before generally levelling out on the east side towards the POI at the substation.

### 2.3 Proposed Drainage Conditions

Project construction would consist of numerous activities that may alter the drainage patterns of the site. A list of activities that could influence drainage conditions are as follows:

- Topsoil and organic material stripped from working area.
- Site and Roadway areas to be covered by base of gravel as working surface.
- Sloped Access Roads.
- Site grading according to engineering design plans.

The Project will alter the soil's hydraulic characteristics within the BESS area due to vegetation removal and grading. The use of heavy equipment during construction of the Project would also potentially result in soil compaction which would result in increased density and reduce the soil's ability to absorb precipitation. Therefore, soil compaction may result in increased surface water run-off, erosion, and sedimentation. Proposed low impact development (LID) areas shown in the civil site plan (Appendix A) and other BMPs listed in Section 3 of this ECP provide some form of mitigation of impacts to the altered drainage condition.

## 2.4 Existing Soils

According to the U.S. Department of Agriculture Natural Resources Conservation Service, the Project site is underlain primarily by Linne clay loam (LaC), on 3% to 15% slopes, with lesser amounts of Rincon clay loam (RdA), on 1% to 3% slopes, and additional amounts of Linne clay loam, 15 to 30 percent slopes located along the gen-tie route. These soils are well-drained, have medium runoff, have very low (0.00 inches per hour) capacity to transmit water, and are not prone to flooding. The U.S. Department of Agriculture Natural Resources Conservation Service does not consider any of the soils noted previously to be hydric soils (USDA 2023).

## 2.5 Climate

The average annual precipitation in the area between 2000 and 2024 is approximately 13.62 inches per year, typically occurring between October and May each year. The average temperature can range from 26 degrees Fahrenheit to 104 degrees Fahrenheit with fluctuations (NOAA 2024). The area is generally dry to moderate humidity and the average winds are between 6 to 13 mph usually from the west though the wind direction can fluctuate especially in winter months (WeatherSpark 2024).

## 3 Best Management Practices

This ECP provides specifications and guidelines for reducing any sediment loading into receiving water bodies that could occur during construction of the project. Although some erosion and soil loss are unavoidable during land-disturbance activities, the proper siting and design of erosion and sediment controls will reduce the amount of sediment transported offsite. Effective site management minimizes excessive soil erosion by keeping the soil stabilized and directing runoff from disturbed areas to locations where sediments are removed prior to discharge to receiving water bodies. The following information identifies construction BMPs could be implemented during construction of the Project.

### 3.1 Schedule

A schedule for BMP implementation is included in Table 1. BMPs will be implemented according to the schedules described in Table 1 and in the following sections in accordance with weather conditions and phases of construction.

**Table 1. BMP Implementation Schedule**

BMP	Implementation	Duration
<b>Erosion Control</b>		
EC-1 Scheduling	Prior to site disturbance	Entirety of project
EC-2 Preservation of Existing Vegetation	Start of construction	Entirety of project
EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch	After site grading	At completion of grading/ stockpiled soils
EC-4 Hydroseeding	After site grading	At completion of grading/ stockpiled soils
EC-5 Soil Binders	After site grading	At completion of grading/ stockpiled soils
EC-6 Straw Mulch	After site grading	At completion of grading/ stockpiled soils
EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats	After site grading	At completion of grading/ stockpiled soils
EC-8 Wood Mulching	After site grading	At completion of grading/ stockpiled soils
EC-15 Soil Preparation - Roughening	After site grading	At completion of grading/ stockpiled soils
EC-16 Non-Vegetative Stabilization	During site grading on access roads	At completion of grading/ stockpiled soils
<b>Sediment Control</b>		
SE-1 Silt Fence	Prior to site disturbance	Entirety of project
SE-5 Fiber Rolls	Start of site disturbance	Entirety of project
SE-6 Gravel Bags	Start of site disturbance	Entirety of project
SE-7 Street Sweeping & Vacuuming	Start of site disturbance	Entirety of project
SE-8 Sandbag Barrier	Start of site disturbance	Entirety of project

**Table 1. BMP Implementation Schedule**

BMP	Implementation	Duration
SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls (MLSC)	Prior to site disturbance	Entirety of project
TC-1 Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit	Prior to site disturbance	Entirety of project
TC-2 Stabilized Construction Roadway	After site grading	Entirety of project
<b>Wind Erosion</b>		
WE-1 Wind Erosion Control	Start of site disturbance	Entirety of project

## 3.2 Erosion and Sediment Control

### 3.2.1 Erosion-Control BMPs

Erosion control, also referred to as soil stabilization, is a source control measure that is designed to prevent soil particles from detaching and becoming transported in the stormwater runoff. Erosion control BMPs protect the soil surface by covering and/or binding the soil particles. All inactive soil disturbed areas on the project site, and most active areas prior to the onset of rain, must be protected from erosion. Soil disturbed areas may include relatively flat areas, as well as slopes. Inactive areas include areas of construction activity that have been disturbed but are not currently being worked on and are not scheduled to be re-disturbed for at least 14 days.

This project will incorporate minimum temporary soil stabilization requirements, temporary erosion control/soil stabilization measures required by the contract documents, and other measures selected by the contractor and ECP inspector. This construction project will implement the California Stormwater Quality Association (CASQA) practices identified in Table 1, above, and Table 2, below, to assure effective temporary and final erosion control during construction. Individual BMP fact sheets containing additional information on BMP implementation and maintenance are included in Appendix C.

**Table 2. Erosion-Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. & Name	Description
EC-1 Scheduling	Scheduling (EC-1) involves developing a written plan which takes local climate (rainfall, wind, etc.) into account while sequencing and implementing construction activities and BMPs. This is especially important and useful during rainy season. Proper construction sequencing can reduce the use of other more costly and less effective BMPs over time. Additional sediment and erosion control measures may need to be added during the rainy season, such as temporary debris basins and stockpiling of emergency gravel bags. Schedule major grading operations during dry months, when practical. Allow sufficient time prior to the onset of rainfall to stabilize the soil with vegetation or physical means or to install sediment trapping devices. When rainfall is predicted, adjust the construction schedule to allow the implementation of soil stabilization and sediment treatment controls on all disturbed areas prior to the onset of rain.

**Table 2. Erosion-Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. & Name	Description
EC-2 Preservation of Existing Vegetation	Vegetation will be cleared within the Project boundary and not outside of boundaries. Planned preservation of existing vegetation minimizes the potential of removing or injuring existing shrubs and grasses that protect soil from erosion. Preserve vegetation to the maximum extent practicable within the drainage areas and outside the disturbance limit.
EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch	Hydraulic mulch consists of various types of fibrous materials mixed with water and sprayed onto the soil surface in slurry form to provide a layer of temporary protection from wind and water erosion. Hydraulic mulch as a temporary, stand-alone erosion control BMP is suitable for disturbed areas that require temporary protection from wind and water erosion and rough graded areas that will be inactive longer than 14 days. Applied with hydroseeding application for immediate temporary erosion control protection.
EC-4 Hydroseeding	Hydroseeding typically consists of applying a mixture of a hydraulic mulch, seed, fertilizer, and stabilizing emulsion with a hydraulic mulcher, to temporarily protect exposed soils from erosion by water and wind. Hydraulic seeding, or hydroseeding, is simply the method by which temporary or permanent seed is applied to the soil surface.
EC-5 Soil Binders	Soil binding consists of the application and maintenance of a soil stabilizer to exposed soil surfaces. Soil binders are materials applied to the soil surface to temporarily prevent water- and wind-induced erosion of exposed soils on construction sites for rough graded areas that will be inactive longer than 14 days. Soil stockpiles that will be inactive during the construction season may require multiple applications, depending on the type of product used. Use on disturbed soil areas following construction completion that are not hydroseeded right away.
EC-6 Straw Mulch	Straw mulch consists of placing a uniform layer of straw and incorporating it into the soil with a studded roller or crimper or anchoring it with a tackifier or stabilizing emulsion. Straw mulch protects the soil surface from the impact of rain drops, preventing soil particles from becoming dislodged. Use in areas that require temporary and degradable erosion control.
EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats	Geo-mats, mattings, rolled erosion control products, etc. are used to cover soil surfaces to reduce erosion from rainfall impacts, hold soil in place, and absorb and hold moisture near the soil surface. They may also be used to stabilize soils until vegetation is established or to be reinforced non-woody surface vegetation. They are typically applied on slopes where erosion hazard is high, and vegetation will be slow to establish. Mattings are also used on stream banks, swales, and other drainage channels, where moving water at velocities between 3 feet per second and 6 feet per second is likely to cause scour and wash out new vegetation, and in areas where the soil surface is disturbed and where existing vegetation has been removed. Use on steep slopes for temporary stabilization. Installation will be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Proper soil preparation is essential to ensure complete contact with the soil. Remove all rocks, clods, vegetation, or other obstructions so that the installed blankets or mats will have complete direct contact with the soil.

**Table 2. Erosion-Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. & Name	Description
EC-8 Wood Mulching	Wood mulching consists of applying a mixture of shredded wood mulch, bark or compost to disturbed soils. The primary function of wood mulching is to reduce erosion by protecting bare soil from rainfall impact, increasing infiltration, and reducing runoff.
EC-15 Soil Preparation/ Roughening	Roughening surface soils by mechanical methods (sheepsfoot rolling, track walking, stair stepping, and imprinting) to break up sheet flow. Use on rough graded areas and soil stockpiles that will be inactive longer than 14 days. Preparation and roughening will take place prior to installing other erosion controls, such as hydraulically applied stabilizers, or sediment controls, such as fiber rolls on the faces of slopes.
EC-16 Non-vegetative Stabilization	Non-vegetative stabilization methods are used for temporary or permanent stabilization of areas prone to erosion and should be used only where vegetative options are not feasible.

### 3.2.2 Sediment-Control BMPs

Sediment controls are structural measures that are intended to complement and enhance the soil stabilization/ erosion control measures and reduce sediment discharges from construction areas. Sediment controls are designed to intercept and filter out soil particles that have been detached and transported by the force of water. This project will incorporate minimum temporary sediment control requirements.

Temporary sediment control materials will be maintained onsite throughout the duration of the project, to allow implementation of temporary sediment controls in the event of predicted rain, and for rapid response to failures or emergencies, in conformance with requirements and as described in this ECP. This includes implementation requirements for active areas and inactive areas before the onset of anticipated rain events. Locations of sediment control BMPs are discussed in Table 3. Individual BMP fact sheets containing additional information on BMP implementation and maintenance are included in Appendix C.

**Table 3. Sediment Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. & Name	Description
SE-1 Silt Fence	Silt fences detain sediment-laden water, promoting sedimentation within the fence. A silt fence can be used around the perimeter of the project site to delineate and protect the total area of disturbance. May be used in lieu of proposed fiber rolls along perimeter.

**Table 3. Sediment Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. & Name	Description
SE-5 Fiber Rolls	Fiber rolls consist of straw, coir, or other biodegradable materials bound into a tight tubular roll wrapped by netting, which can be biodegradable or natural. Fiber rolls placed at the toe and on the face of slopes intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, release the runoff as sheet flow, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff through sedimentation. When fiber rolls are placed at the toe and on the face of slopes along the contours, they intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, release the runoff as sheet flow, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff (through sedimentation). By interrupting the length of a slope, fiber rolls can also reduce sheet and rill erosion until vegetation is established. Fiber should also be used around the base of soil stockpiles to contain sediment particles.
SE-6 Gravel Bags	A gravel bag berm is a series of gravel-filled bags placed on a level contour to intercept sheet flows. Gravel bags pond sheet flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out, and release runoff slowly as sheet flow, preventing erosion. Similar to fiber rolls, Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow.
SE-7 Street Sweeping & Vacuuming	Visible sediment tracking onto public and private streets from the project site will be inspected and swept on a daily basis, particularly at points of egress, to prevent sediments from entering receiving waters. All immediate access roads will also be swept prior to any rain event.
SE-8 Sandbag Barrier	A sandbag barrier is a series of sand-filled bags placed on a level contour to intercept or to divert sheet flows. Sandbag barriers placed on a level contour pond sheet flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out.
SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls (MLSC)	Manufactured linear sediment controls (MLSC) are premanufactured devices that are typically specified and installed for drainage and sediment control on the perimeter of disturbed sites or stockpiles and as check dams within channels. Typically, MLSCs can be reused. MLSCs are generally used in areas as a substitute for fiber rolls and silt fences in sediment control applications to slow down runoff water, divert drainage or contain fines and sediment. MLSCs are a linear control and application suitability varies based on the specific product type.

### 3.2.3 Tracking-Control BMPs

Tracking controls will be considered and implemented year-round and throughout the duration of the project, at all access (ingress/egress) points to the project site where vehicles and/or equipment may track sediment from the construction site onto public or private roadways.

Locations of tracking control BMPs are discussed in Table 4. Individual BMP fact sheets containing additional information on BMP implementation and maintenance are included in Appendix C.



**Table 4. Tracking Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. & Name	Description
TC-1 Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit	Construction entrances will be stabilized at all points of site ingress and egress. Rumble racks (i.e. shaker plates) will be included to provide additional sediment removal and reduce potential for offsite tracking of sediment.
TC-2 Stabilized Construction Roadway	Areas that are graded for construction should be stabilized immediately after grading and frequently maintained to prevent erosion and control dust. Access roads, laydown yards BESS areas, and substation will be stabilized using aggregate/gravel.

### 3.2.4 Wind Erosion-Control BMPs

Wind erosion control BMPs will be considered and implemented year-round and throughout the duration of the project on all disturbed soils on the project site that are subject to wind erosion, and when significant wind and dry conditions are anticipated during project construction. The objective of wind controls is to prevent the transport offsite by wind of soil from soil-disturbed areas of the project site.

Locations of wind erosion control BMPs are discussed in Table 5. Individual BMP fact sheets containing additional information on BMP implementation and maintenance are included in Appendix C.

**Table 5. Wind Erosion Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. & Name	Description
WE-1 Wind Erosion Control	Dust control measures will be used to stabilize soil from wind erosion, primarily in the form of construction watering (i.e. wet suppression). This BMP should be considered in the following areas of activity: (1) construction vehicle traffic on unpaved roads, (2) drilling and blasting activities, (3) soil and debris storage piles, (4) batch drop from front-end loaders, (5) un-stabilized soil, and (6) final grading. The project site should be inspected daily to determine the need to implement this BMP and water trucks will be onsite during all active grading activities.

## 3.3 Post-Construction Stormwater Management BMPs

The purpose for post-construction stormwater management is to eliminate and/or control the discharge of pollutants in stormwater runoff from the site once the construction activities are complete and the site fully stabilized. Developments generally alter the existing drainage course, increase the area of impervious surface, and create potential sources for runoff contamination. The ECP requires the implementation of post-construction BMPs to minimize the impacts of these changes to the site. Post-construction BMPs can take two forms: non-structural or structural control measures.

Non-structural controls are practices that are specifically intended to reduce or prevent the generation of stormwater pollutants. They are generally implemented to address the problem at the source, and do not require

any structural changes to the facility. Table 6 shows a list of non-structural controls intended for the Project. Structural control measures may be necessary to control any pollutants that are still present in the stormwater after the non-structural controls have been implemented. These types of controls are physical features that control and prevent stormwater pollution. They can range from preventive measures to treatment systems. Table 6 shows the structural source control BMP's known at the time of writing. The post-construction conditions will rely on revegetation with native seed bank.

**Table 6. Non-Structural Source Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. and Name	Description
Site Landscaping Design and Landscape Planning	The project has been designed to disturb as little area as possible during construction. Revegetation/stabilization efforts will rely on preservation of the native seed bank.

**Table 7. Structural Source Control BMPs**

CASQA BMP No. and Name	Description
Low Impact Development (LID) - Bioretention	A stormwater control measure designed to retain stormwater runoff using vegetated depressions and soils engineered to collect, store, treat, and infiltrate runoff. Stormwater runoff volume reduction is generally achieved via infiltration into the underlying native soil. Pollutant removal is achieved through a combination of infiltration, filtration, settling and biochemical processes. Bioretention designs may include an aggregate layer designed to increase retention capacity. Underdrains may also be used to discharge runoff that exceeds the design objective. LID areas are currently planned at the time of writing this report as shown in Appendix A

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

---

# 4 BMP Inspection, Maintenance, and Inspection Plan

## 4.1 BMP Inspection and Maintenance

The ECP requires routine weekly inspections of all BMPs to ensure that all BMPs are implemented and maintained and functioning as intended. Inspections of BMPs will also occur prior to, during, following qualifying precipitation events. Visual inspections are required for the duration of the project with the goal of confirming that appropriately selected BMPs have been implemented, are being maintained, and are effective in preventing potential pollutants from coming in contact with stormwater. Inspections will include answers to the following questions:

- Are erosion and sediment control BMPs installed properly? Are they effective in controlling erosion and sediment from the site?
- Are any stockpiled soils covered securely against wind and water erosion?
- Have drainage patterns changed as a result of grading operations? Have the BMPs been adjusted accordingly?
- Are exposed areas stabilized in a timely manner after completion of construction activities? Are inactive areas properly stabilized?
- Are employees, contractors, and subcontractors properly trained?

Additional maintenance of BMPs may include the following:

- Removal of sediment from barriers, check dams, berms, traps, basins, and other sedimentation devices (remove when sediment accumulation reaches one-half the design storage volume).
- Replacement or repair of worn or damaged fiber rolls and gravel bags/sandbags.
- Replacement or repair of damaged structural controls.
- Repair of damaged soil stabilization measures.
- Other control maintenance as defined in each BMP fact sheet (see Appendix C).

Completed inspection checklists, photographs, and other maintenance records will be documented in the ECP (Appendix D). Forms that may be utilized to document inspections are included in Appendix E.

## 4.2 Inspection Plan

The Inspection plan is developed to meet the specific requirements and objectives identified in the ECP.

## 4.2.1 Requirements

Inspection requirements for erosion and sedimentation visual observations (inspections) are described in the inspection plan. The inspection plan will identify the applicable inspection requirements and inspection frequency. The following BMP visual inspections will be required:

- Weekly
- Pre-qualifying precipitation event
- During qualifying precipitation event
- Post qualifying precipitation event

## 4.2.2 Safety

The inspector and any designated personnel that may conduct inspections must receive training prior to conducting any inspections. This includes reviewing the inspection plan as well as any health and safety plans for the construction site. The personnel should also obtain the necessary background information required for an overall understanding of the project, including schedules and site specific BMPs. This may be accomplished through on-the-job training or tailgate style weekly briefings and will involve initial and periodic refresher courses as necessary.

An inspector will not be able to conduct the BMP inspections under the following circumstances:

- During dangerous weather conditions such as electrical storms, flooding, and high winds above 40 miles per hour
- Outside of scheduled site operating hours; or
- When the site is not accessible to personnel.

## 4.2.3 BMP Inspections

The ECP requires that BMPs be inspected **weekly** and pre-, during, and post qualifying precipitation event BMP inspections. The purpose of these inspections is to identify BMPs that:

- Need maintenance to operate effectively.
- Failed.
- Could fail to operate as intended; or
- Provide photo documentation of site conditions under active construction.

If deficiencies are identified during BMP inspections, **repairs, or design changes to BMPs must be initiated within 72 hours of identification and need to be completed as soon as possible.** All BMP inspections must be documented on an inspection checklist with photos of the active construction areas (Appendix F). The checklist should be made

site-specific based on the BMPs and outfalls for each construction project, and copies of the completed inspection forms, any corrective actions, and photographs of active construction areas taken will be included in this ECP.

## 4.2.4 Qualifying Precipitation Event Inspections

A **qualifying precipitation event** (QPE) is any weather pattern that is forecast to have a 50% or greater Probability of Precipitation (PoP) and a Quantitative Precipitation Forecast (QPF) of 0.5 inches or more within a 24-hour period. The event begins with the 24-hour period when 0.5 inches have been forecasted and continues on subsequent 24-hour periods when 0.25-inches of precipitation or more is forecasted.

The ECP requires that the construction site be inspected within **96 hours** following a qualifying precipitation event (to coincide with weekly inspections). These inspections are only required during normal business hours of the construction site. The weather forecasts from the NOAA are used.

Records must be kept of all qualifying precipitation event inspections included in Appendix D. Records need to be maintained onsite and document:

- Personnel performing the observations.
- Observation dates (time and date).
- Printed copy of the NOAA forecast.
- Weather conditions (including the rain gauge reading for the qualifying rain event from the nearest government rain gauge).
- Site information, including stage of construction, activities completed since last inspection, and approximate area of the site exposed.
- A list of all erosion controls and sediment controls inspected.
- Corrective actions required.

Copies of the visual inspection forms that may be used for inspections are included in Appendix F.

The purpose of the pre-qualifying precipitation event inspection is to:

- Inspect all stormwater drainage areas to identify leaks, spills, or uncontrolled pollutant sources and when necessary, implement appropriate corrective actions to control pollutant sources.
- Inspect all BMPs to identify whether they have been properly implemented, and when necessary, implement appropriate corrective actions to control pollutant sources.
- Inspect all stormwater storage and containment areas to detect leaks and check for available capacity to prevent overflow.

During Qualifying Precipitation Events visual inspections shall be conducted at least once every 24-hour period. Qualifying Precipitation Events are extended for each subsequent 24-hour period forecast to have at least 0.25 inches of precipitation.

The purpose of the post-qualifying precipitation event inspection is to determine if BMPs functioned as designed and identify if any additional BMPs are required. The post-qualifying precipitation event inspection needs to cover:

- All BMPs to determine if they were adequately designed, implemented, and effective.
- Identify BMPs that require repair or replacement due to damage.
- Identify additional BMPs that need to be implemented.

After assessing BMPs, it should be noted on the inspection form whether the BMPs need maintenance.

---

# 5 Training

## 5.1 Overview

Training is imperative to the success of the BMPs identified in the ECP. Adequate training is required if BMPs are to be installed and maintained properly. The ECP will be implemented under the direction of the ECP inspector, who may delegate tasks to trained employees provided adequate supervision and oversight by the ECP inspector. ECP training should be held for all construction personnel at the beginning of construction and rainy seasons.

## 5.2 Training Requirements

Individuals responsible for ECP preparation as well as personnel responsible for installation, inspection, maintenance, and repair of BMPs, will be appropriately trained. Training can include both formal and informal training, will be on an ongoing basis (e.g., quarterly, annually), and will be documented in the training document log in Appendix G of this ECP.

### 5.2.1 Employee & Subcontractor Training

This section highlights the importance of training and integrating the elements of employee/subcontractor training from the individual source controls into a comprehensive training program as part of this ECP. The focus of this section is more general and includes the overall objectives and approach for ensuring employee/subcontractor training in stormwater pollution prevention.

The ECP inspector will periodically advise on-site personnel of their responsibility to participate in reducing erosion and sediment discharges from the site. The ECP inspector is also responsible for training personnel and subcontractors who are responsible for the implementation and maintenance of the BMPs. This training may consist of workshops, meetings, tailgate sessions, videos, presentations, and handout materials. All training shall be documented and filed with the ECP.

Throughout the duration of the project, different subcontractors will be used. All subcontractors shall be informed of the measures required in the ECP prior to commencement of work. It is strongly encouraged that the contractor uses Training Document Logs to ensure compliance with all ECP requirements for all the subcontractors.

#### Objectives

Employee/subcontractor training should be based on four objectives:

- Promote a clear identification and understanding of the problem, including activities with the potential to cause erosion and sediment discharges.
- Identify solutions (BMPs).
- Promote employee/subcontractor ownership of the problems and the solutions.
- Integrate employee/subcontractor feedback into training and BMP implementation.



## Approach

Integrate ECP training with existing training programs that may be required by other regulations such as the *Illness and Injury Prevention Program* (IIPP) (Senate Bill 198) (California Code of Regulations Title 8, Section 3203), the *Hazardous Waste Operations and Emergency Response* (HAZWOPER) Standard (29 CFR 1910.120), the *Spill Prevention Control and Countermeasure* (SPCC) Plan (40 CFR 112), the *Hazardous Materials Management Plan* (Business Plan) (California Health and Safety Code, Section 6.95), and the *Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan* (SWPPP) (Section 402 CWA).

Train employee/subcontractors in standard operating procedures and spill cleanup techniques described in the fact sheets. Employee/subcontractors trained in spill containment and cleanup should be present during the loading/unloading and handling of materials.

Proper education of off-site contractors is often overlooked. The conscientious efforts of well-trained employee/subcontractors can be lost by unknowing off-site contractors, so make sure they are well informed about what they are expected to do on site.

---

# 6 Responsible Parties and Operators

## 6.1 Responsible Parties

**Table 8. List of Responsible Parties**

Responsibility	Contact Information
Project Owner / Legally Responsible Person (LRP)	LEVY ALAMEDA, LLC 155 Wellington Street W, Suite 2930 Toronto, Ontario M5V 3H1, Canada
ECP developer	Dudek 605 3rd St Encinitas, California 92924 Susan Jennings, Environmental Compliance Manager, QSD G7175 sjennings@dudek.com
ECP monitor	To Be Determined

## 6.2 Contractor List

Contractors and subcontractors known at the time of writing are listed in **Table 10**.

**Table 9. List of Contractors**

General Contractor	To Be Determined
--------------------	------------------

INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

---

## 7 References

CASQA 2023. California Stormwater Quality Association (CASQA) Stormwater Best Management Practice (BMP) Handbook. August 2023

NOAA 2024. NOWData - NOAA Online Weather Data – Livermore. <https://www.weather.gov/wrh/Climate?wfo=mtr>. Accessed June 2024

WeatherSpark 2024. Climate and Average Weather Year-Round in Tracy. <https://weatherspark.com/y/1104/Average-Weather-in-Tracy-California-United-States-Year-Round>. Accessed June 2024

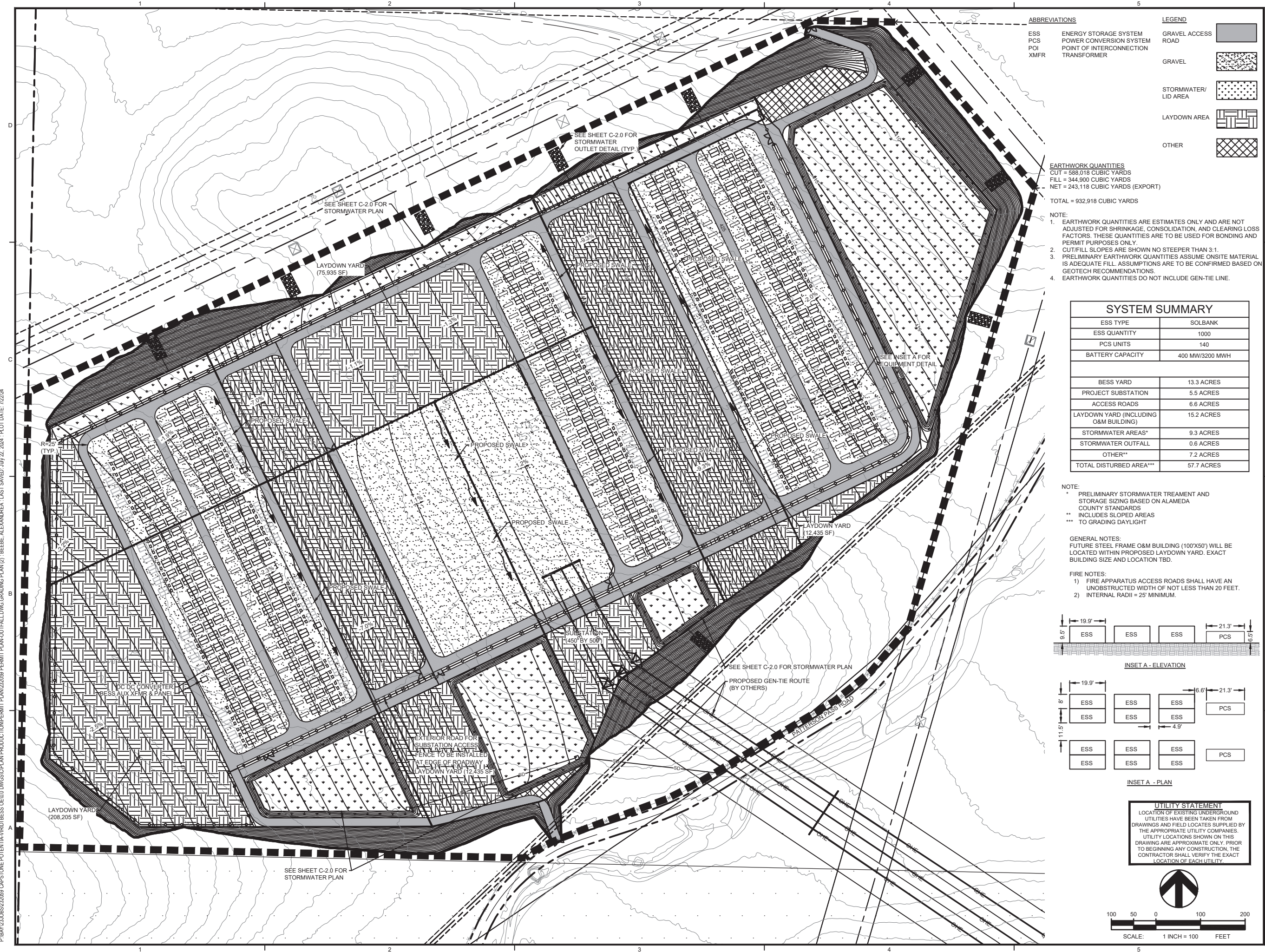
INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

---

# Appendix A

## Site Maps





ABBREVIATIONS		LEGEND	
ESS	ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM	GRAVEL ACCESS ROAD	
PCS	POWER CONVERSION SYSTEM	GRAVEL	
POI	POINT OF INTERCONNECTION	STORMWATER/ LID AREA	
XMFR	TRANSFORMER	LAYDOWN AREA	
		OTHER	

EARTHWORK QUANTITIES  
OUT = 588,018 CUBIC YARDS  
FILL = 344,900 CUBIC YARDS  
NET = 243,118 CUBIC YARDS (EXPORT)  
TOTAL = 932,918 CUBIC YARDS

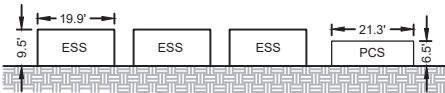
- NOTE:
- EARTHWORK QUANTITIES ARE ESTIMATES ONLY AND ARE NOT ADJUSTED FOR SHRINKAGE, CONSOLIDATION, AND CLEARING LOSS FACTORS. THESE QUANTITIES ARE TO BE USED FOR BONDING AND PERMIT PURPOSES ONLY.
  - CUT/FILL SLOPES ARE SHOWN NO STEEPER THAN 3:1.
  - PRELIMINARY EARTHWORK QUANTITIES ASSUME ONSITE MATERIAL IS ADEQUATE FILL. ASSUMPTIONS ARE TO BE CONFIRMED BASED ON GEOTECH RECOMMENDATIONS.
  - EARTHWORK QUANTITIES DO NOT INCLUDE GEN-TIE LINE.

SYSTEM SUMMARY	
ESS TYPE	SOLBANK
ESS QUANTITY	1000
PCS UNITS	140
BATTERY CAPACITY	400 MW/3200 MWH
BESS YARD	13.3 ACRES
PROJECT SUBSTATION	5.5 ACRES
ACCESS ROADS	6.6 ACRES
LAYDOWN YARD (INCLUDING O&M BUILDING)	15.2 ACRES
STORMWATER AREAS*	9.3 ACRES
STORMWATER OUTFALL	0.6 ACRES
OTHER**	7.2 ACRES
TOTAL DISTURBED AREA***	57.7 ACRES

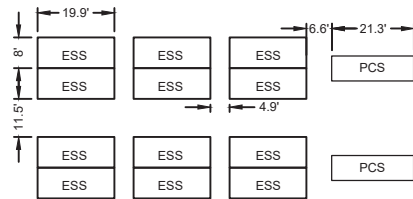
- NOTE:
- \* PRELIMINARY STORMWATER TREATMENT AND STORAGE SIZING BASED ON ALAMEDA COUNTY STANDARDS
  - \*\* INCLUDES SLOPED AREAS
  - \*\*\* TO GRADING DAYLIGHT

GENERAL NOTES:  
FUTURE STEEL FRAME O&M BUILDING (100'X50') WILL BE LOCATED WITHIN PROPOSED LAYDOWN YARD. EXACT BUILDING SIZE AND LOCATION TBD.

- FIRE NOTES:
- FIRE APPARATUS ACCESS ROADS SHALL HAVE AN UNOBSTRUCTED WIDTH OF NOT LESS THAN 20 FEET.
  - INTERNAL RADII = 25' MINIMUM.

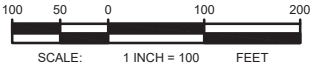


INSET A - ELEVATION



INSET A - PLAN

UTILITY STATEMENT  
LOCATION OF EXISTING UNDERGROUND UTILITIES HAVE BEEN TAKEN FROM DRAWINGS AND FIELD LOCATES SUPPLIED BY THE APPROPRIATE UTILITY COMPANIES. UTILITY LOCATIONS SHOWN ON THIS DRAWING ARE APPROXIMATE ONLY. PRIOR TO BEGINNING ANY CONSTRUCTION, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL VERIFY THE EXACT LOCATION OF EACH UTILITY.



PROJECT  
INFORMATION

CLIENT  
INFORMATION

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION
-----	------	-------------

PROJ. NO. #####  
DRAWN LB  
CHECKED RB  
DATE 07/06/20

© COFFMAN ENGINEERS INC.

SHEET TITLE:

CIVIL SITE PLAN

SHEET NO:

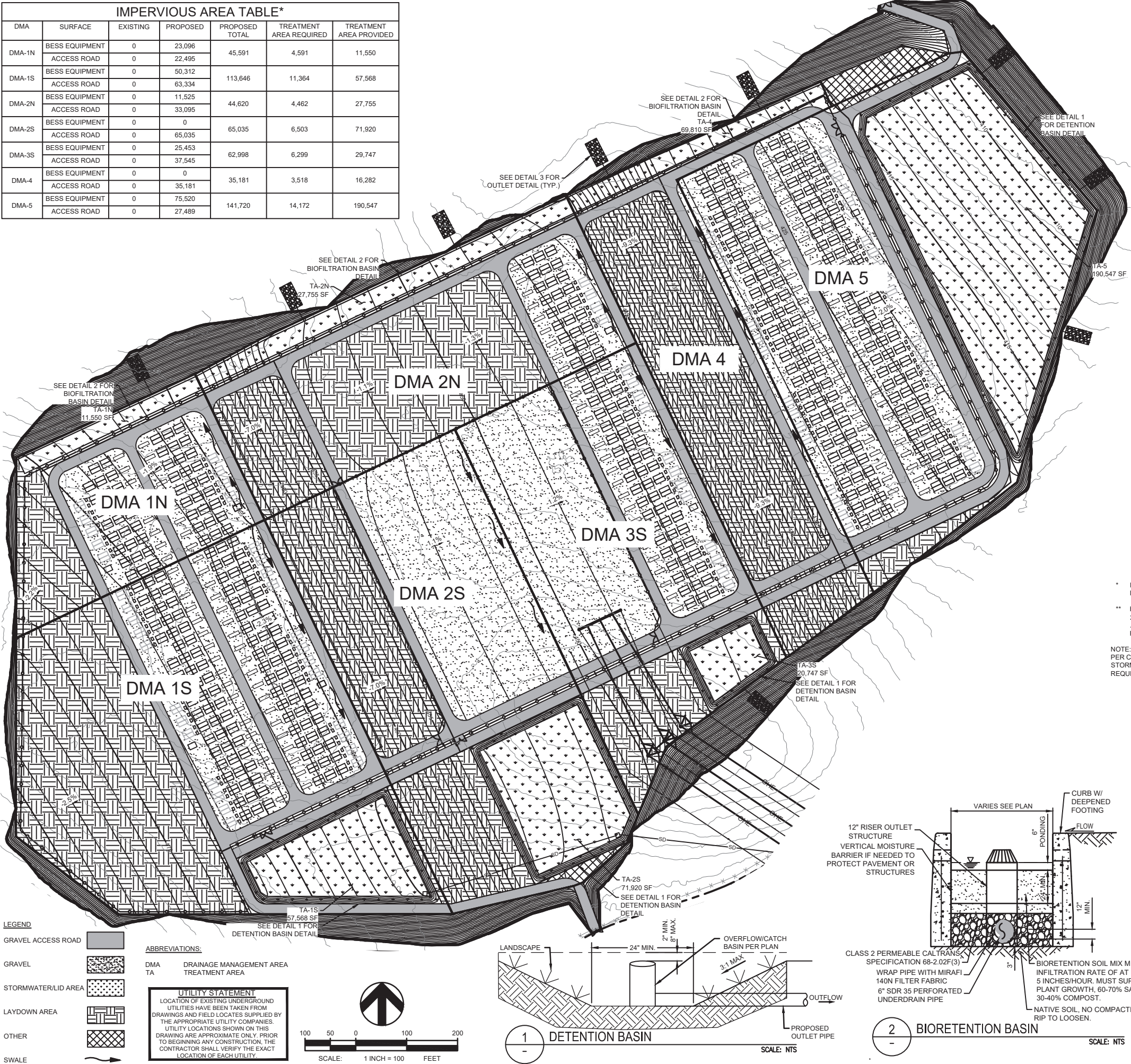
C-1.0

SHEET OF XXX

P:\BAY23\085232659 CAPSTONE POTENTIAL\VRID\BESS DEC10 DWG\SSOPLAN PRODUCTION\PERMIT PLAN\OUTFALL.DWG GRADING PLAN (2) - BEEBE, ALEXANDREA - LAST SAVED: JUL 22, 2024 - PLOT DATE: 7/22/24



IMPERVIOUS AREA TABLE*						
DMA	SURFACE	EXISTING	PROPOSED	PROPOSED TOTAL	TREATMENT AREA REQUIRED	TREATMENT AREA PROVIDED
DMA-1N	BESS EQUIPMENT	0	23,096	45,591	4,591	11,550
	ACCESS ROAD	0	22,495			
DMA-1S	BESS EQUIPMENT	0	50,312	113,646	11,364	57,568
	ACCESS ROAD	0	63,334			
DMA-2N	BESS EQUIPMENT	0	11,525	44,620	4,462	27,755
	ACCESS ROAD	0	33,095			
DMA-2S	BESS EQUIPMENT	0	0	65,035	6,503	71,920
	ACCESS ROAD	0	65,035			
DMA-3S	BESS EQUIPMENT	0	25,453	62,998	6,299	29,747
	ACCESS ROAD	0	37,545			
DMA-4	BESS EQUIPMENT	0	0	35,181	3,518	16,282
	ACCESS ROAD	0	35,181			
DMA-5	BESS EQUIPMENT	0	75,520	141,720	14,172	190,547
	ACCESS ROAD	0	27,489			



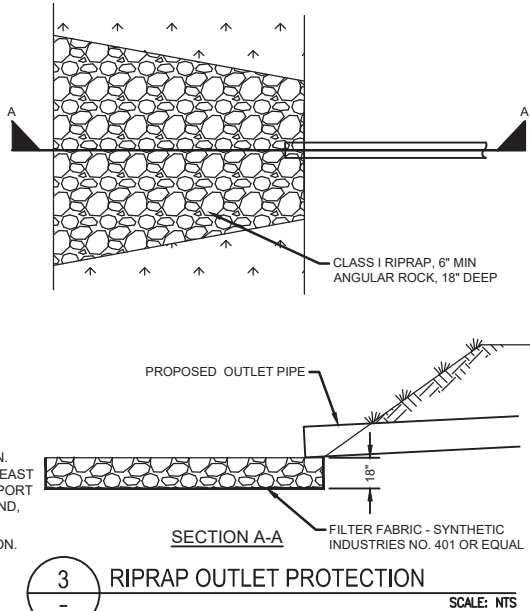
PRELIMINARY HYDROLOGY CALCS**					
DMA	STORM EVENT	INTENSITY (IN/HR)	Q-PRE (CFS)	Q-POST (CFS)	DELTA-Q (CFS)
DMA-1N	5-YEAR	1.15	0.8	2.7	1.9
	15-YEAR	1.50	1.0	3.5	2.4
	25-YEAR	1.66	1.1	3.8	2.7
	100-YEAR	2.05	1.4	4.7	3.3
DMA-1S	5-YEAR	1.06	1.9	6.5	4.6
	15-YEAR	1.38	2.5	8.4	6.0
	25-YEAR	1.52	2.7	9.3	6.6
	100-YEAR	1.88	3.4	11.5	8.1
DMA-2N	5-YEAR	1.15	1.4	4.7	3.3
	15-YEAR	1.50	1.8	6.1	4.3
	25-YEAR	1.66	2.0	6.8	4.8
	100-YEAR	2.05	2.5	8.3	5.9
DMA-2S	5-YEAR	1.21	2.0	6.9	4.9
	15-YEAR	1.58	2.7	9.0	6.4
	25-YEAR	1.74	2.9	10.0	7.0
	100-YEAR	2.16	3.6	12.4	8.7
DMA-3S	5-YEAR	1.02	1.4	4.6	3.3
	15-YEAR	1.32	1.8	6.0	4.2
	25-YEAR	1.46	1.9	6.6	4.7
	100-YEAR	1.81	2.4	8.2	5.8
DMA 4	5-YEAR	0.73	0.8	2.6	1.8
	15-YEAR	0.95	1.0	3.3	2.4
	25-YEAR	1.05	1.1	3.7	2.6
	100-YEAR	1.30	1.3	4.6	3.2
DMA 5	5-YEAR	1.45	3.4	11.4	8.1
	15-YEAR	1.89	4.4	14.9	10.5
	25-YEAR	2.08	4.8	16.4	11.6
	100-YEAR	2.59	6.0	20.4	14.4

VOLUME SIZING			
DMA	REQUIRED STORAGE VOLUME (CF)	TREATMENT AREA PROVIDED	DEPTH REQUIRED
DMA-1N	72,284	11,550	6.3
DMA-1S	175,245	57,568	3.0
DMA-2N	127,235	27,755	4.6
DMA-2S	188,346	71,920	2.6
DMA-3S	124,989	29,747	6.0
DMA-4	69,810	16,282	4.3
DMA-5	31,758	190,547	1.6

\* PRELIMINARY LID CALCULATIONS ARE CONSERVATIVELY BASED ON 10% OF TOTAL IMPERVIOUS AREA.

\*\* HYDROLOGY CALCULATIONS ARE PER ALAMEDA CO. HYDROLOGY & HYDRAULICS MANUAL 2016. RAINFALL INTENSITY IS BASED ON A CALCULATED TIME OF CONCENTRATION (T<sub>c</sub>) AND MEAN ANNUAL PRECIPITATION OF 12 INCHES PER ALAMEDA CO. HYDROLOGY & HYDRAULICS MANUAL.

NOTE: PER CALCULATIONS ABOVE, THE POST-CONSTRUCTION RUNOFF RATES FOR THE 100-YEAR STORM EXCEED 5 CFS SO A PRELIMINARY ON-SITE STORM RUNOFF DETENTION PLAN WILL BE REQUIRED PER ALAMEDA COUNTY GUIDELINES.



PROJECT INFORMATION

CLIENT INFORMATION

REV	DATE	DESCRIPTION
-----	------	-------------

PROJ. NO.	#####
DRAWN	LB
CHECKED	RB
DATE	01/09/2024

© COFFMAN ENGINEERS INC.

SHEET TITLE:

PRELIMINARY STORMWATER PLAN

SHEET NO:

C-2.0



---

# Appendix B

## Schedule

The Project is anticipated to be built over an approximately 18-month period from the onset of site preparation activities through energization. Following energization, testing and commissioning would take place over 6 months. Initial mobilization and site preparation is anticipated to begin no later than Q1 2026 and testing and commissioning is anticipated to conclude no later than Q2 2028. It is anticipated that construction crews would work 8 to 10 hours per day, with work occurring Monday through Friday. Overtime, night work, and weekend work would be used only as necessary to meet the project schedule or complete time-sensitive or safety critical work. All work schedules would comply with applicable California labor laws, county regulations, and the Project Labor Agreement. Estimated durations of construction activities are presented in Table B-1. However, the duration of particular construction activities may be affected by weather, unanticipated site conditions, the supply chain, and coordination between the different activities.

**Table B-1. Estimated Construction Activity Duration**

Construction Activity	Estimated Duration
Site Preparation	8 Weeks
Civil Work and Grading	24 Weeks
Foundations and Underground Equipment	16 Weeks
BESS Equipment Installation	20 Weeks
Project Substation Installation	32 Weeks
Gen-Tie Foundations and Structure Erection	8 Weeks
Gen-Tie Line Stringing and Pulling	2 Weeks
Testing and Commissioning	22 Weeks
PG&E Interconnection Facility Upgrades within Tesla Substation	26 Weeks

---

# **Appendix C**

## CASQA Fact Sheets

# CASQA-LIDI BIORETENTION DETAILS

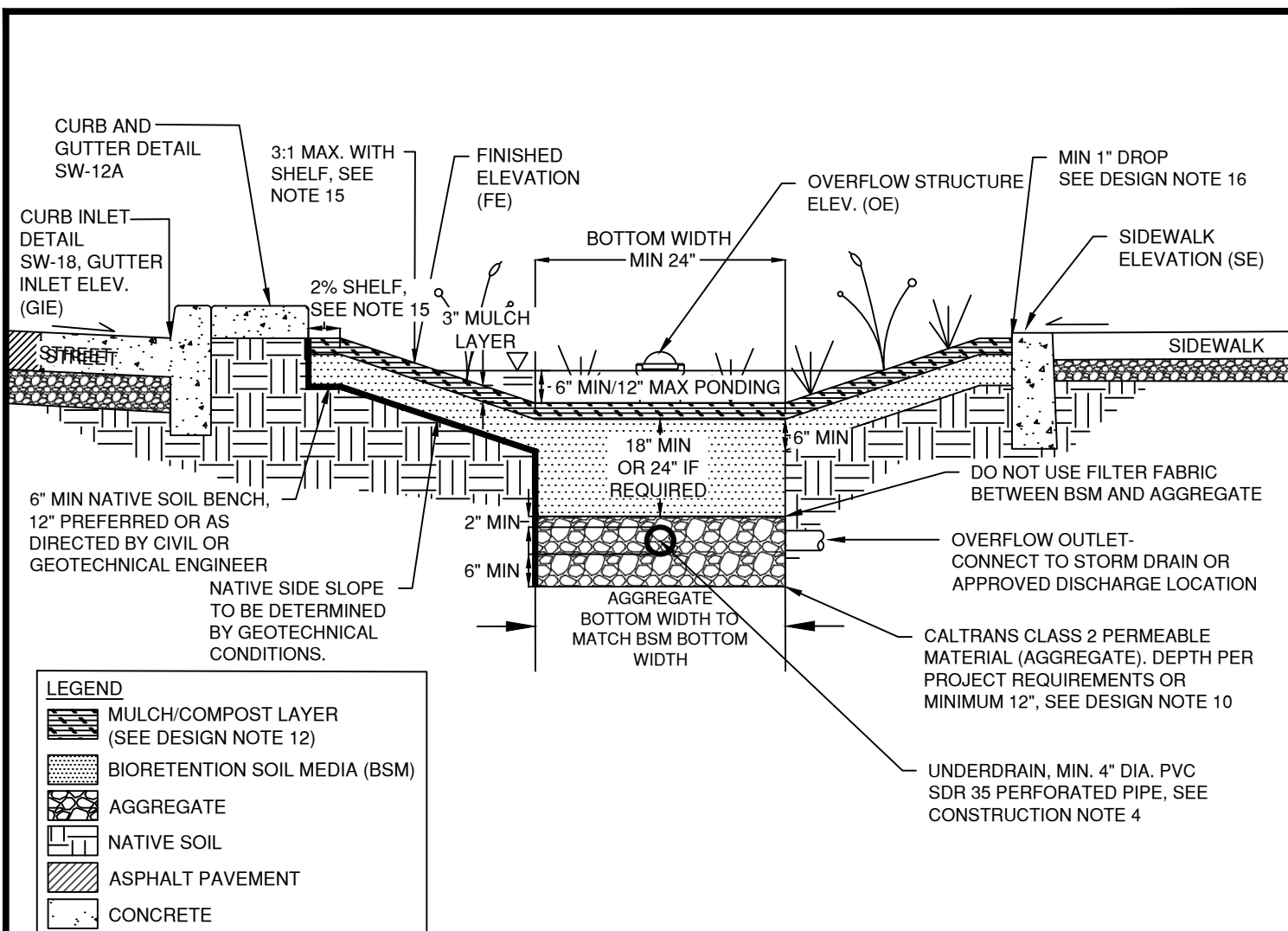
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

NAME	NO.
<b>STREET SIDE BIORETENTION (WITH PARKING)</b>	
STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, WITH PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN	SW-1
STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, WITH PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN	SW-1A
STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, WITH PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN	SW-2
STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, WITH PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN	SW-2A
<b>STREET SIDE BIORETENTION (NO PARKING)</b>	
STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, NO PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN	SW-3
STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, NO PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN	SW-3A
STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, NO PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN	SW-4
STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, NO PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN	SW-4A
STREET BIORETENTION BULB OUT, NO PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN	SW-5
STREET BIORETENTION BULB OUT, MID BLOCK CROSSING PLAN VIEW	SW-5.1
<b>PARKING LOT BIORETENTION</b>	
PARKING LOT SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, WITH UNDERDRAIN	SW-6
PARKING LOT SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, NO UNDERDRAIN	SW-6A
PARKING LOT BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, WITH UNDERDRAIN	SW-7
PARKING LOT BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, NO UNDERDRAIN	SW-7A
<b>BIOFILTRATION PLANTER BOX (NO PARKING)</b>	
PLANTER BOX, NO PARKING	SW-9
<b>APPURTENANT STRUCTURES</b>	
CURB AND GUTTER	SW-12
CURB AND GUTTER	SW-12A
DEEP CURB	SW-13
THICKENED EDGE SIDEWALK	SW-14
FLUSH CURB AT SIDEWALK	SW-15
PARKING LOT EDGE OPTIONS	SW-16
CURB CUT INLET FOR PLANTERS	SW-17
CURB CUT INLET FOR SLOPE SIDED BIORETENTION FACILITY	SW-18
INLET WITH GRATE	SW-19
GRAVEL CHECK DAM	SW-20
CONCRETE CHECK DAM	SW-21
OVERFLOW STRUCTURE WITH BEEHIVE GRATE	SW-22
OVERFLOW STRUCTURE COLLAR	SW-22A

# CASQA-LIDI BIORETENTION DETAILS

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

NAME	NO.
OVERFLOW STRUCTURE WITH SQUARE GRATE	SW-23
IMPERMEABLE LINER CONNECTION	SW-24
OTHER	
PERVIOUS PAVEMENT	SW-25
PLANTING INUNDATION ZONES & BIORETENTION PLANT LIST	SW-26
DRYWELL STORMWATER BMP	SW-27
SPECIFICATIONS	



#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. INSTALL UNDERDRAIN WITH HOLES FACING DOWN. TOP OF UNDERDRAIN 6" BELOW TOP OF AGGREGATE LAYER. UNDERDRAIN SLOPE MAY BE FLAT.
5. PLACE BSM IN 6" LIFTS. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
6. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
7. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
8. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION WITH PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-1

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE CAPPED, THREADED PVC CLEANOUT FOR UNDERDRAIN, 4" MIN. DIA. WITH SWEEP BEND.
8. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
9. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
10. DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO.4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
11. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
14. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
15. NATIVE SIDE SLOPE 4:1 (H:V) PREFERRED, 3:1 WITH SHELF. 6" MINIMUM SHELF WITH 2% SLOPE TOWARDS FACILITY ADJACENT TO PEDESTRIAN USE OR CURB UNLESS 4:1 SLOPE PROVIDED.
16. INCLUDE AT LEAST 1" DROP FROM CURB ABOVE MULCH LAYER.
17. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

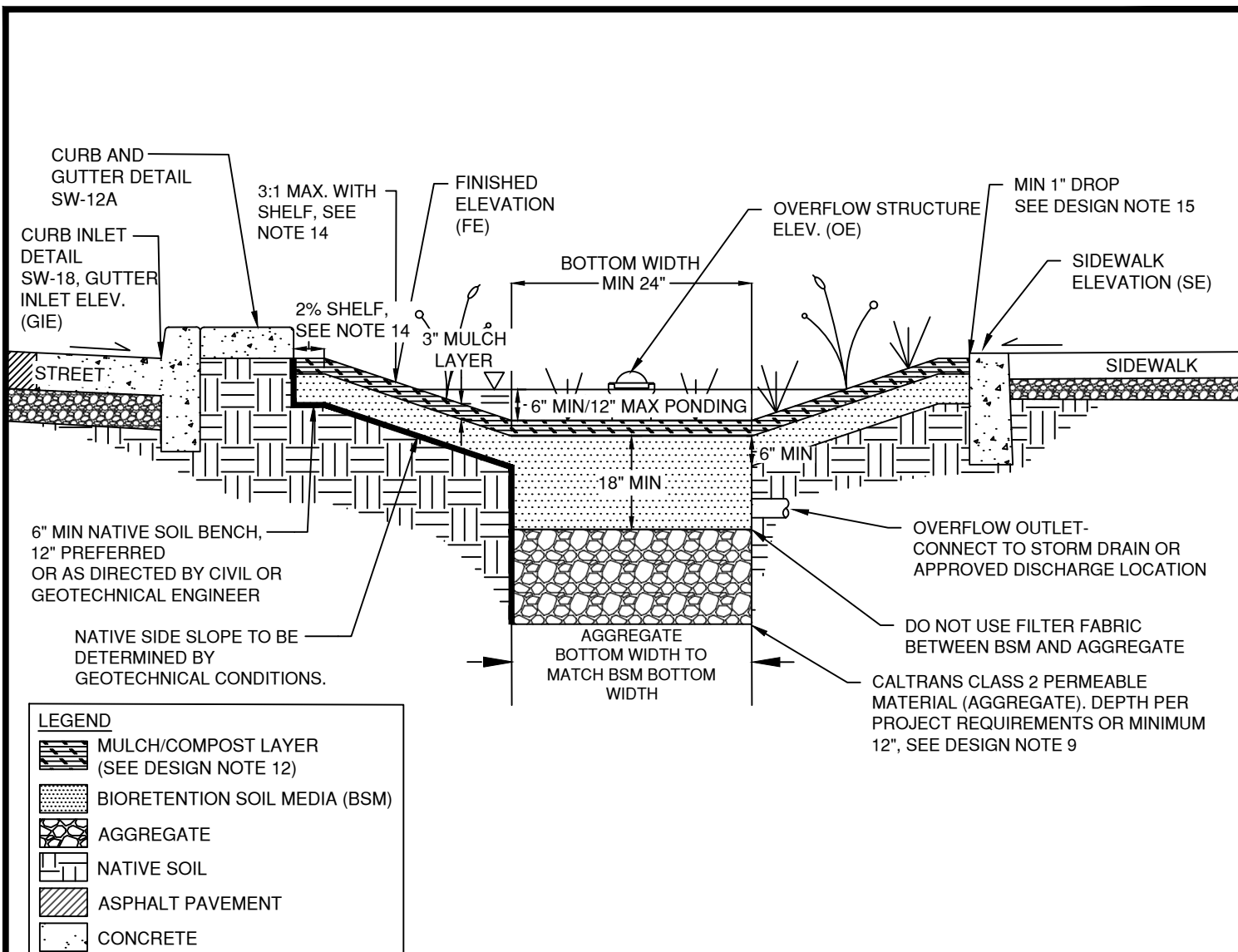
**STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION WITH  
PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN**

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-1**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. PLACE BSM IN 6" LIFTS. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
5. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
6. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
7. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, WITH  
PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-1A

SHEET 1 OF 2



#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
9. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
10. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
11. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
14. NATIVE SIDE SLOPE 4:1 (H:V) PREFERRED, 3:1 WITH SHELF. 6" MINIMUM SHELF WITH 2% SLOPE TOWARDS FACILITY ADJACENT TO PEDESTRIAN USE OR CURB UNLESS 4:1 SLOPE PROVIDED.
15. INCLUDE AT LEAST 1" DROP FROM CURB ABOVE MULCH LAYER.
16. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

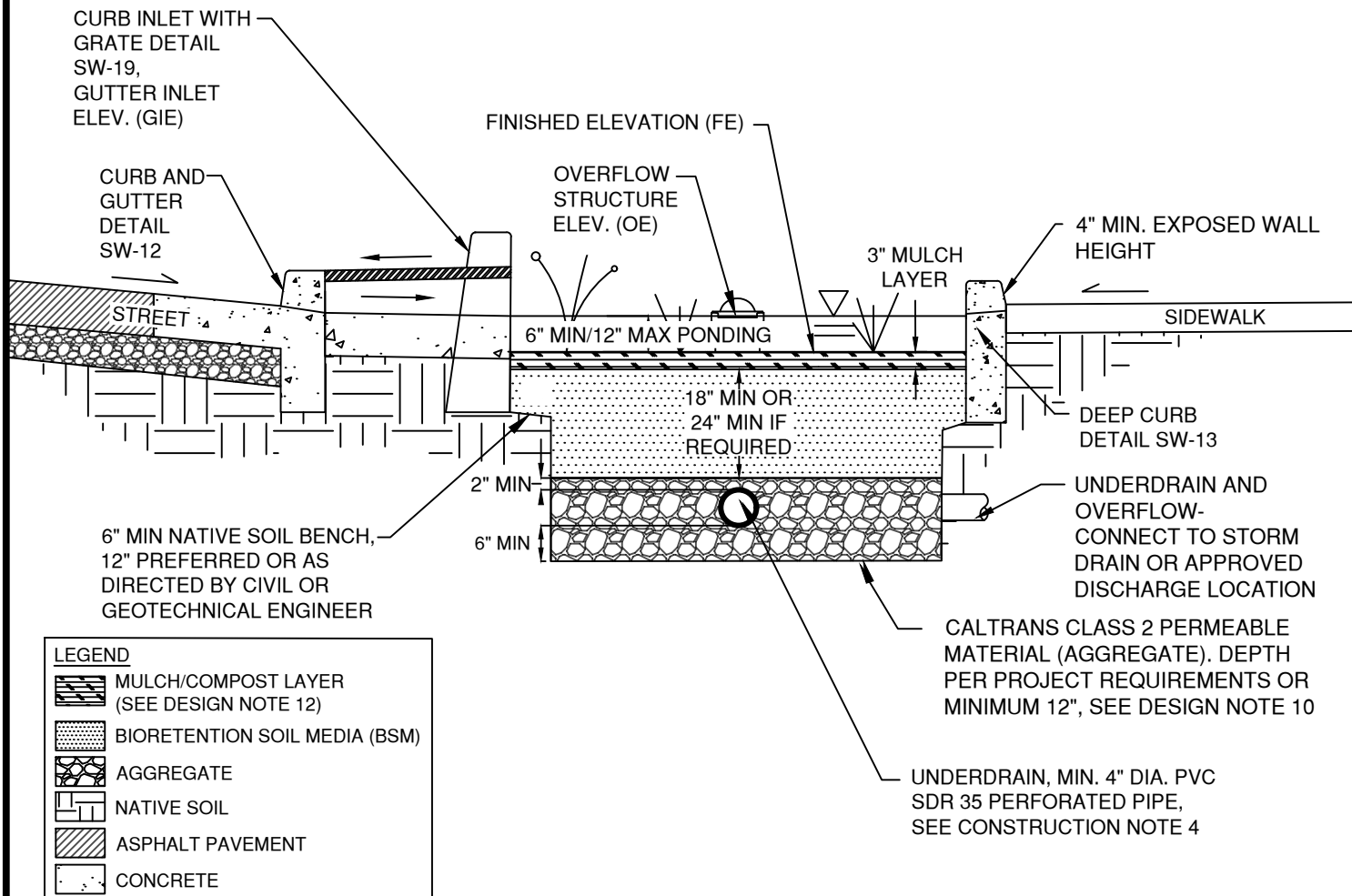
**STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, WITH  
PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN**

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-1A**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. INSTALL UNDERDRAIN WITH HOLES FACING DOWN. TOP OF UNDERDRAIN 6" BELOW TOP OF AGGREGATE LAYER. UNDERDRAIN SLOPE MAY BE FLAT.
5. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
6. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
7. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
8. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX,  
WITH PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-2

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE CAPPED, THREADED PVC CLEANOUT FOR UNDERDRAIN, 4" MIN. DIA. WITH SWEEP BEND.
8. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
9. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
10. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
11. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
14. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
15. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

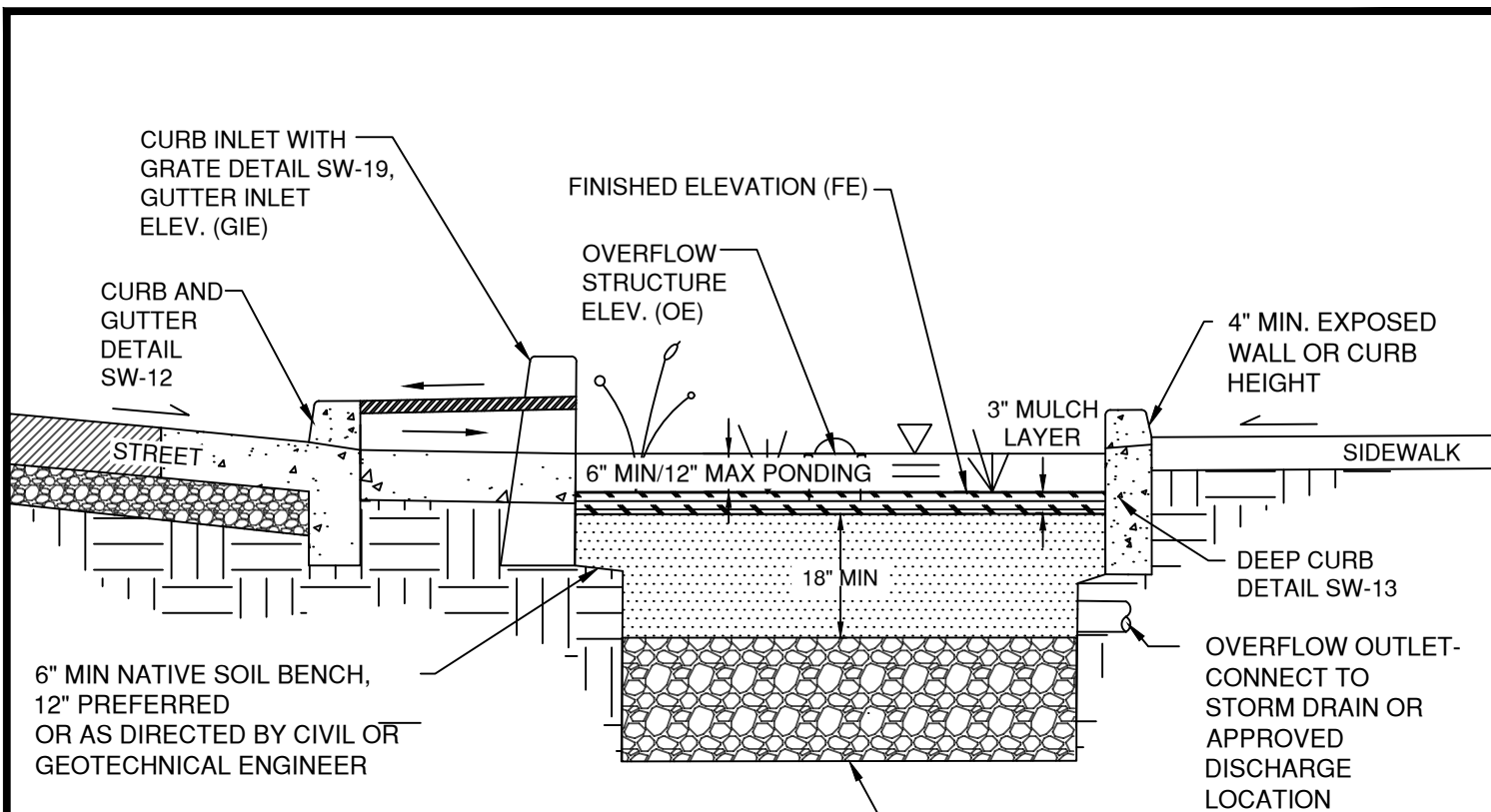
**STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX,  
WITH PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN**

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION







STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-2**

SHEET 2 OF 2



**LEGEND**

-  MULCH/COMPOST LAYER (SEE DESIGN NOTE 12)
-  BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM)
-  AGGREGATE
-  NATIVE SOIL
-  ASPHALT PAVEMENT
-  CONCRETE

**CONSTRUCTION NOTES**

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
5. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
6. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
7. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
9. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
10. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
11. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
14. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

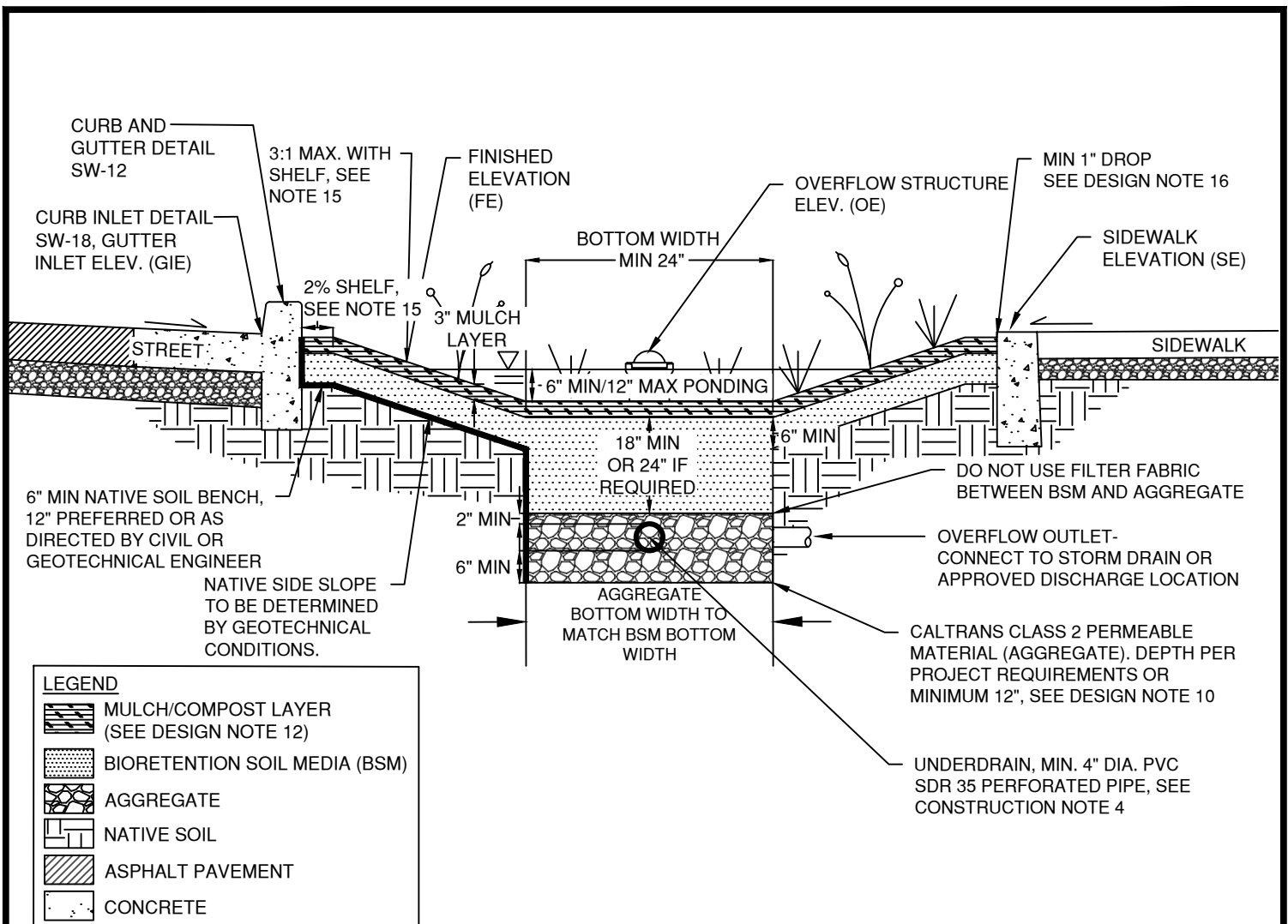
**STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX,  
WITH PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN**

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-2A**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. INSTALL UNDERDRAIN WITH HOLES FACING DOWN. TOP OF UNDERDRAIN 6" BELOW TOP OF AGGREGATE LAYER. UNDERDRAIN SLOPE MAY BE FLAT.
5. PLACE BSM IN 6" LIFTS. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
6. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
7. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
8. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, NO PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-3

SHEET 1 OF 2

### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE CAPPED, THREADED PVC CLEANOUT FOR UNDERDRAIN, 4" MIN. DIA. WITH SWEEP BEND.
8. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
9. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
10. DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO.4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
11. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
14. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
15. NATIVE SIDE SLOPE 4:1 (H:V) PREFERRED, 3:1 WITH SHELF. 6" MINIMUM SHELF WITH 2% SLOPE TOWARDS FACILITY ADJACENT TO PEDESTRIAN USE OR CURB UNLESS 4:1 SLOPE PROVIDED.
16. INCLUDE AT LEAST 1" DROP FROM CURB ABOVE MULCH LAYER.
17. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, NO  
PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN

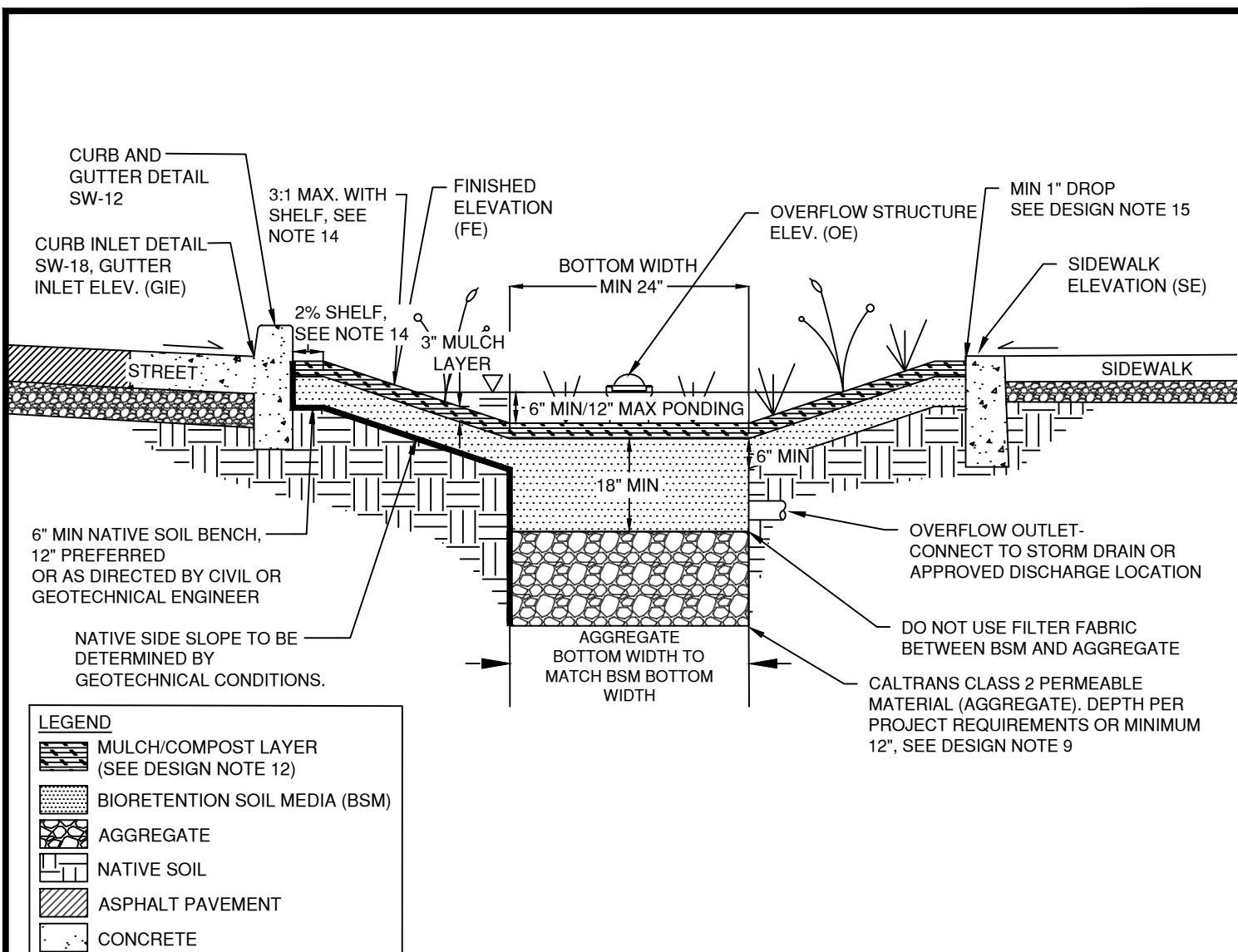
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-3

SHEET 2 OF 2





#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. PLACE BSM IN 6" LIFTS. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
5. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
6. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
7. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION,  
NO PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-3A**

SHEET 1 OF 2



#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
9. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
10. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
11. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
14. NATIVE SIDE SLOPE 4:1 (H:V) PREFERRED, 3:1 WITH SHELF. 6" MINIMUM SHELF WITH 2% SLOPE TOWARDS FACILITY ADJACENT TO PEDESTRIAN USE OR CURB UNLESS 4:1 SLOPE PROVIDED.
15. INCLUDE AT LEAST 1" DROP FROM CURB ABOVE MULCH LAYER.
16. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

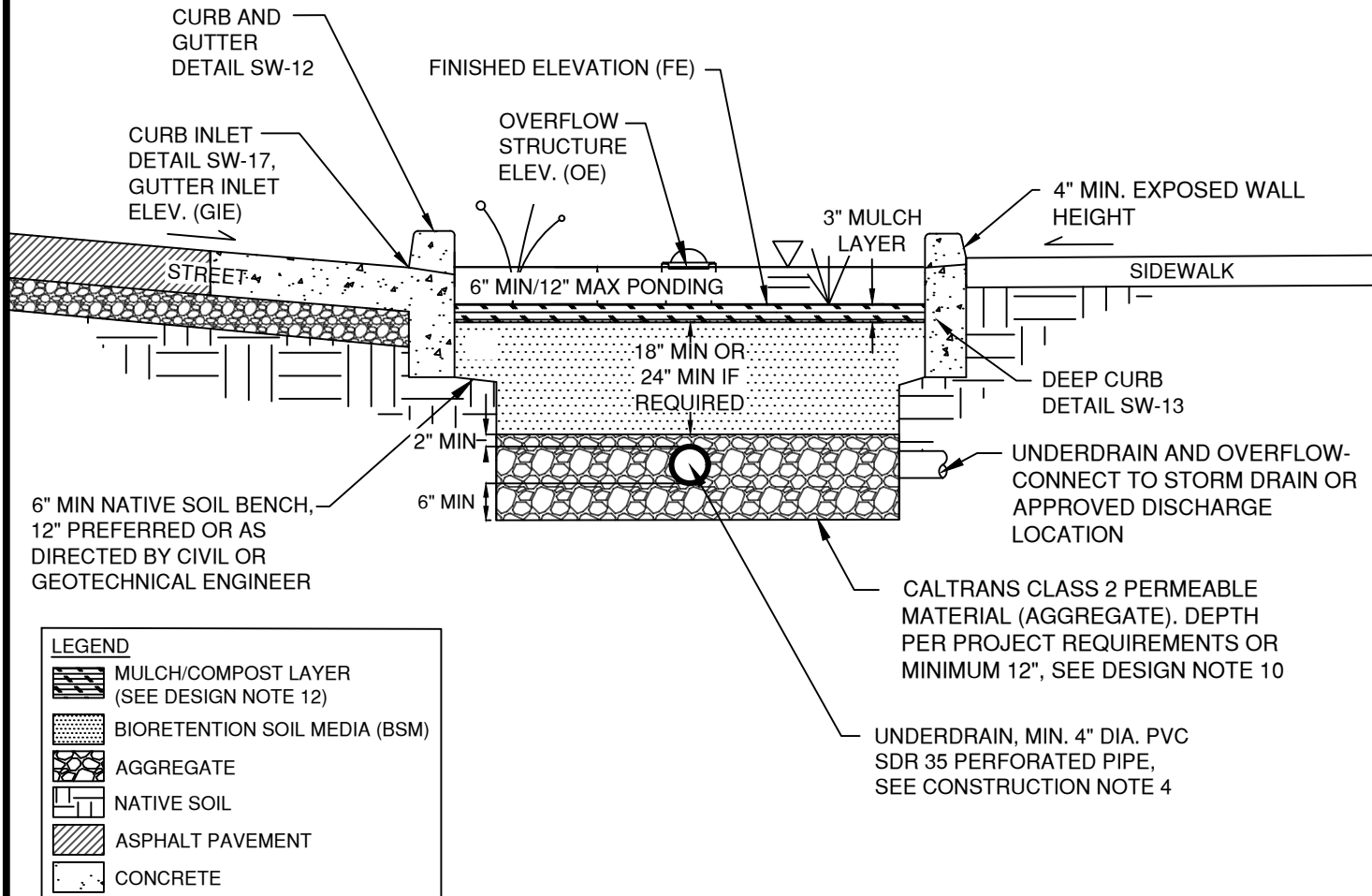
STREET SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, NO  
PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-3A**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. INSTALL UNDERDRAIN WITH HOLES FACING DOWN. TOP OF UNDERDRAIN 6" BELOW TOP OF AGGREGATE LAYER. UNDERDRAIN SLOPE MAY BE FLAT.
5. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
6. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
7. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
8. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, NO  
PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-4

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE CAPPED, THREADED PVC CLEANOUT FOR UNDERDRAIN, 4" MIN. DIA. WITH SWEEP BEND.
8. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
9. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
10. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
11. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
14. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
15. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

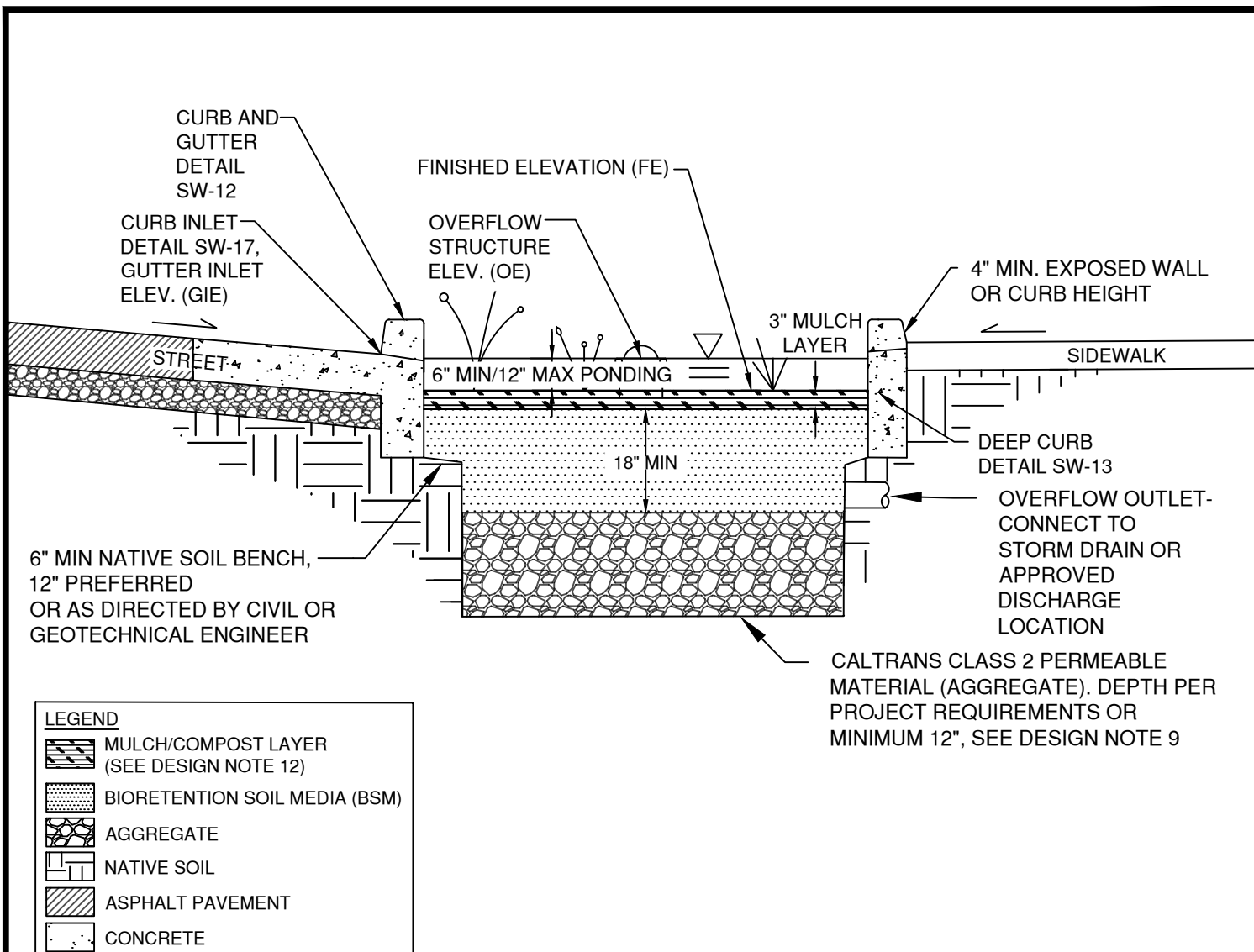
STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, NO  
PARKING, WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-4**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
5. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
6. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
7. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, NO PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-4A

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
9. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
10. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
11. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
14. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

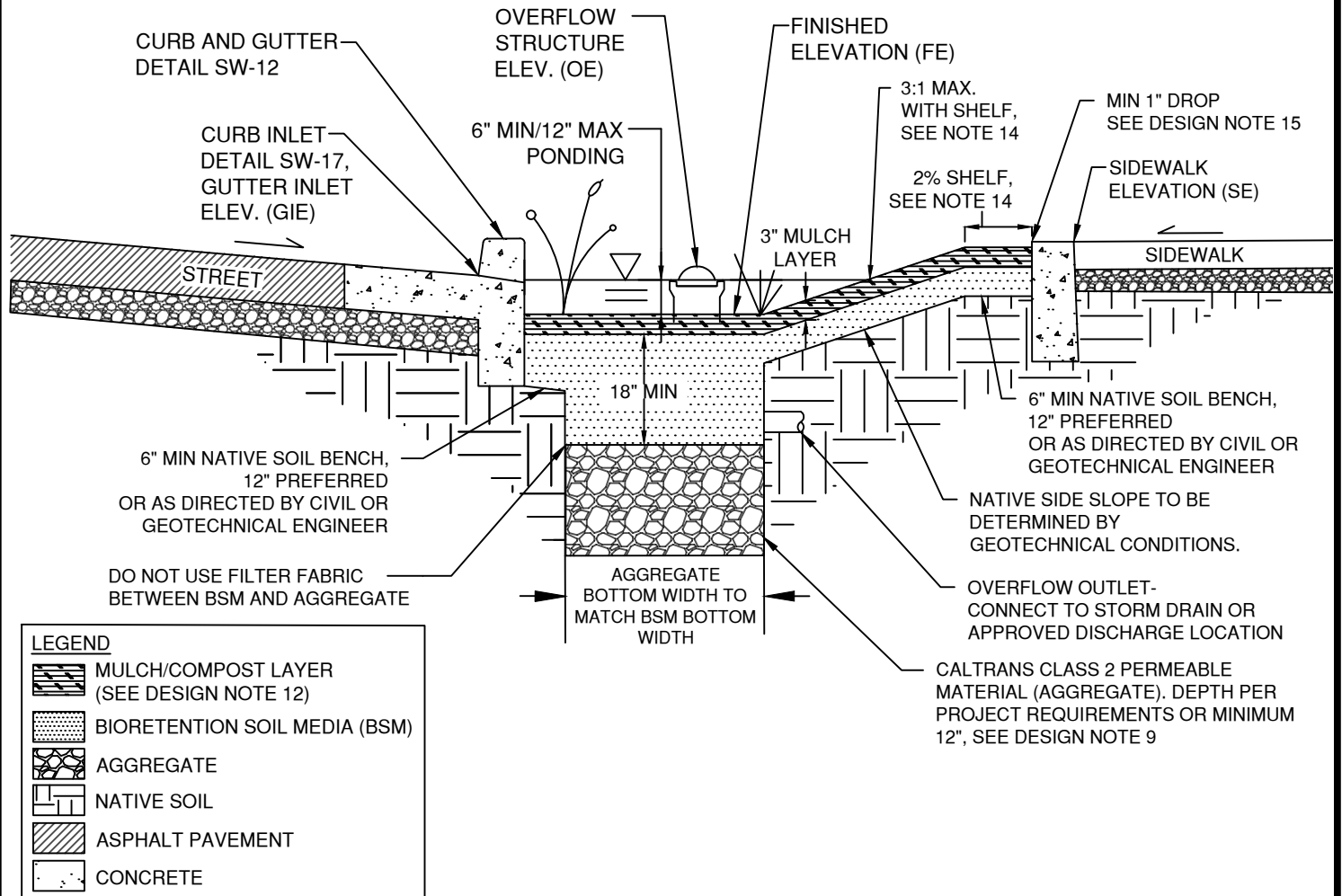
STREET BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, NO  
PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-4A**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. PLACE BSM IN 6" LIFTS. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
5. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
6. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
7. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET BIORETENTION BULB OUT, NO PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN, SINGLE SLOPE

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-5

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
9. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
10. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
11. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
14. NATIVE SIDE SLOPE 4:1 (H:V) PREFERRED, 3:1 WITH SHELF. 6" MINIMUM SHELF WITH 2% SLOPE TOWARDS FACILITY ADJACENT TO PEDESTRIAN USE OR CURB UNLESS 4:1 SLOPE PROVIDED.
15. INCLUDE AT LEAST 1" DROP FROM CURB ABOVE MULCH LAYER.
16. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

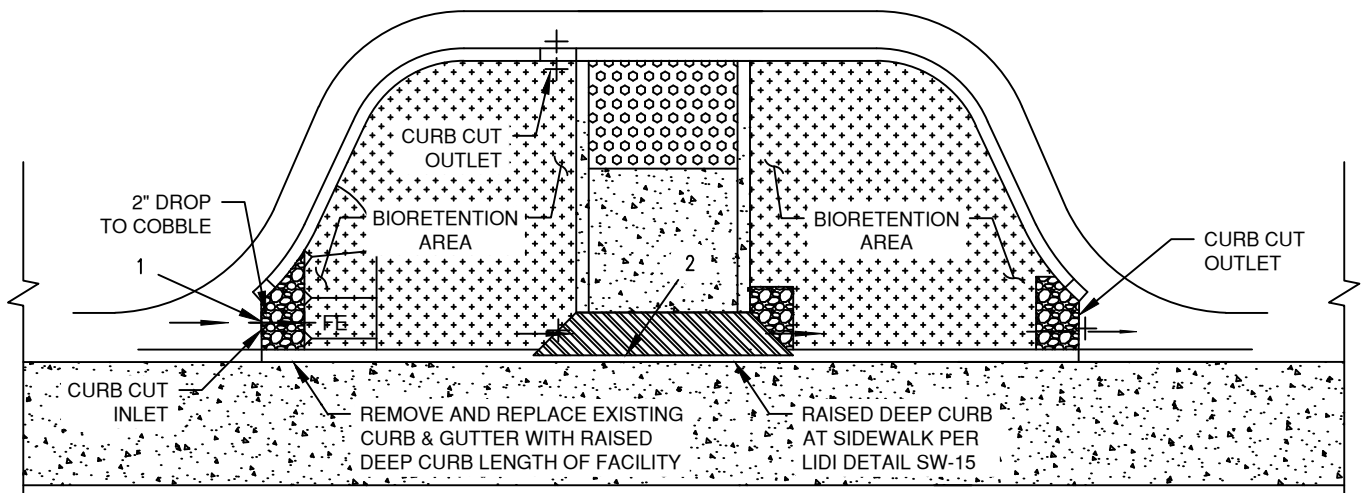
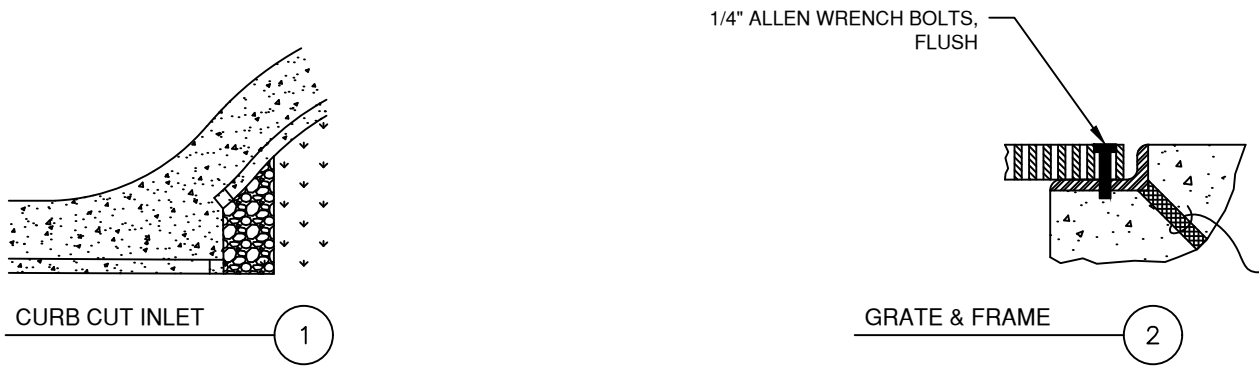
STREET BIORETENTION BULB OUT, NO  
PARKING, NO UNDERDRAIN, SINGLE SLOPE

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-5**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES:

1. INSTALL GRAVEL BAGS AT CURB CUTS TO BLOCK FLOW FROM ENTERING BIORETENTION AREA. CITY TO REMOVE GRAVEL BAGS AT A TIME FOLLOWING CONSTRUCTION COMPLETION.

#### DESIGN NOTE:

1. THIS STANDARD DETAIL ASSUMES GRADUAL LONGITUDINAL AND CROSS SLOPES OF THE ROADWAY. STEEPER SLOPES IN EITHER DIRECTION WILL IMPACT CONVEYANCE AND ELEVATION DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE FACILITY AND ADJACENT ROADWAY, CURB, AND SIDEWALK SURFACES. RETROFIT PROJECTS WILL FACE GREATER CONSTRAINTS THAN NEW CONSTRUCTION. SITE SPECIFIC DESIGN IS CRITICAL TO AVOID GRADE CONFLICTS AND MAXIMIZING PONDING AREA. GRADING PLANS THAT PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS ACROSS THE ENTIRE FACILITY AND ALONG ADJACENT SURFACES ARE NECESSARY.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

STREET BIORETENTION BULB OUT, MID  
BLOCK CROSSING

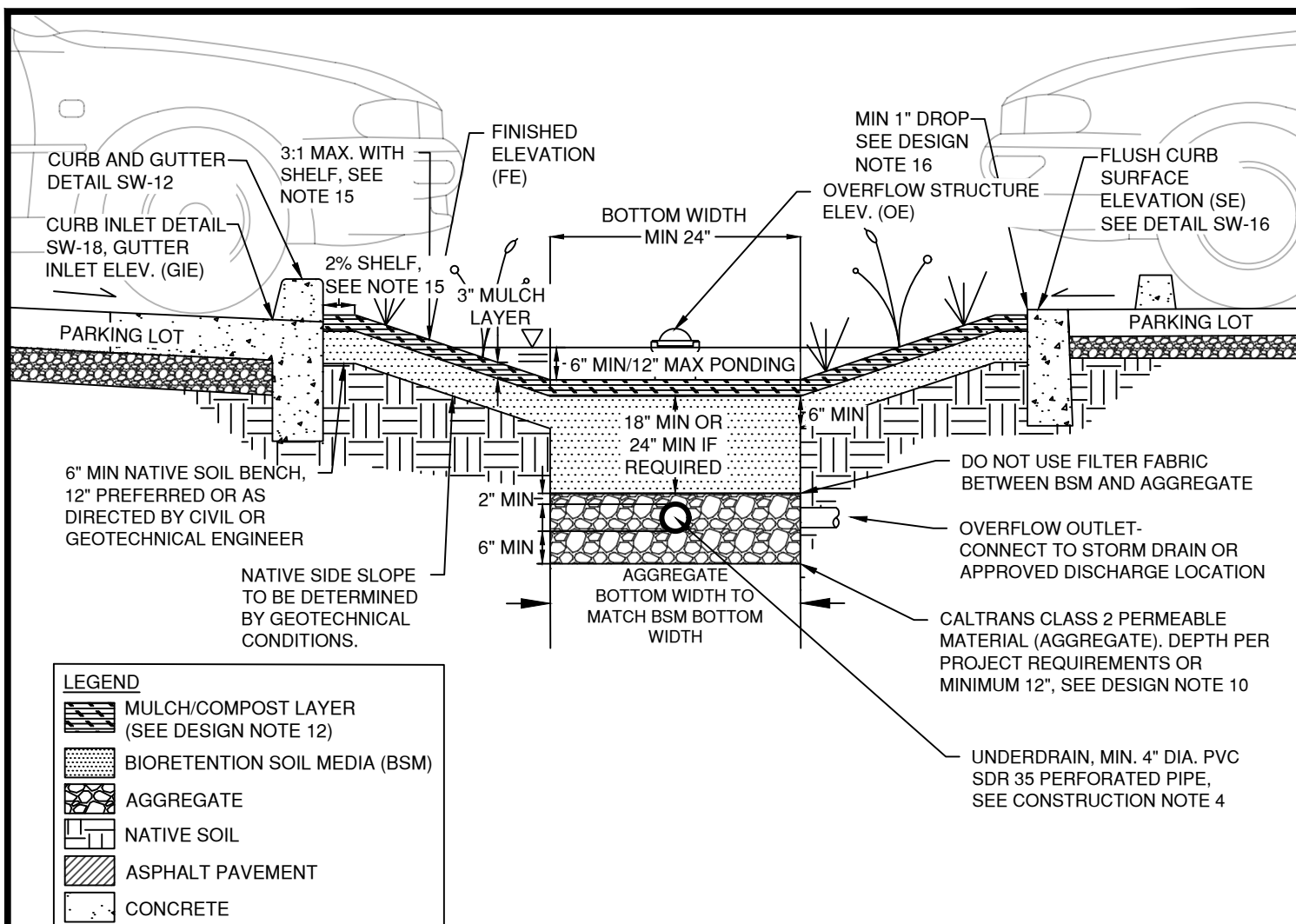
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-5.1

SHEET 1 OF 1





## LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

PARKING LOT SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION,  
WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-6**

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE CAPPED, THREADED PVC CLEANOUT FOR UNDERDRAIN, 4" MIN. DIA. WITH SWEEP BEND.
8. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
9. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
10. DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO.4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
11. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
14. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
15. NATIVE SIDE SLOPE 4:1 (H:V) PREFERRED, 3:1 WITH BENCH. 6" MINIMUM SHELF WITH 2% SLOPE TOWARDS FACILITY ADJACENT TO PEDESTRIAN USE OR CURB UNLESS 4:1 SLOPE PROVIDED.
16. INCLUDE AT LEAST 1" DROP FROM CURB ABOVE MULCH LAYER.
17. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

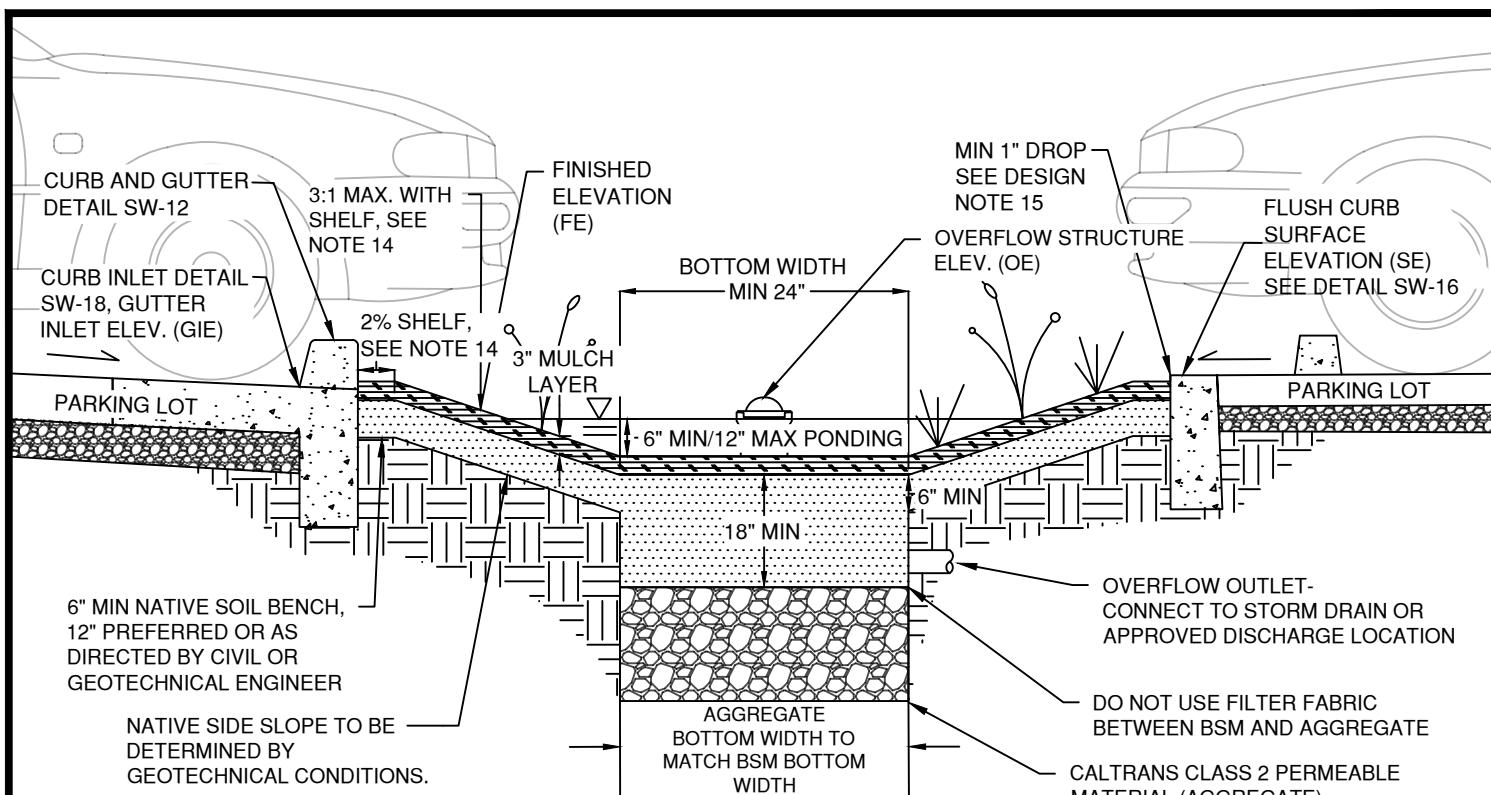
#### PARKING LOT SLOPE-SIDED BIORETENTION, WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-6**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### LEGEND

	MULCH/COMPOST LAYER (SEE DESIGN NOTE 12)
	BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM)
	AGGREGATE
	NATIVE SOIL
	ASPHALT PAVEMENT
	CONCRETE

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIORETENTION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. PLACE BSM IN 6" LIFTS. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
5. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIORETENTION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
6. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.
7. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIORETENTION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

PARKING LOT SLOPE-SIDED  
BIORETENTION, NO UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-6A**

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURE ON CIVIL PLANS (FE,OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
9. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
10. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
11. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
14. NATIVE SIDE SLOPE 4:1 (H:V) PREFERRED, 3:1 WITH SHELF. 6" MINIMUM SHELF WITH 2% SLOPE TOWARDS FACILITY ADJACENT TO PEDESTRIAN USE OR CURB UNLESS 4:1 SLOPE PROVIDED.
15. INCLUDE AT LEAST 1" DROP FROM CURB ABOVE MULCH LAYER.
16. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

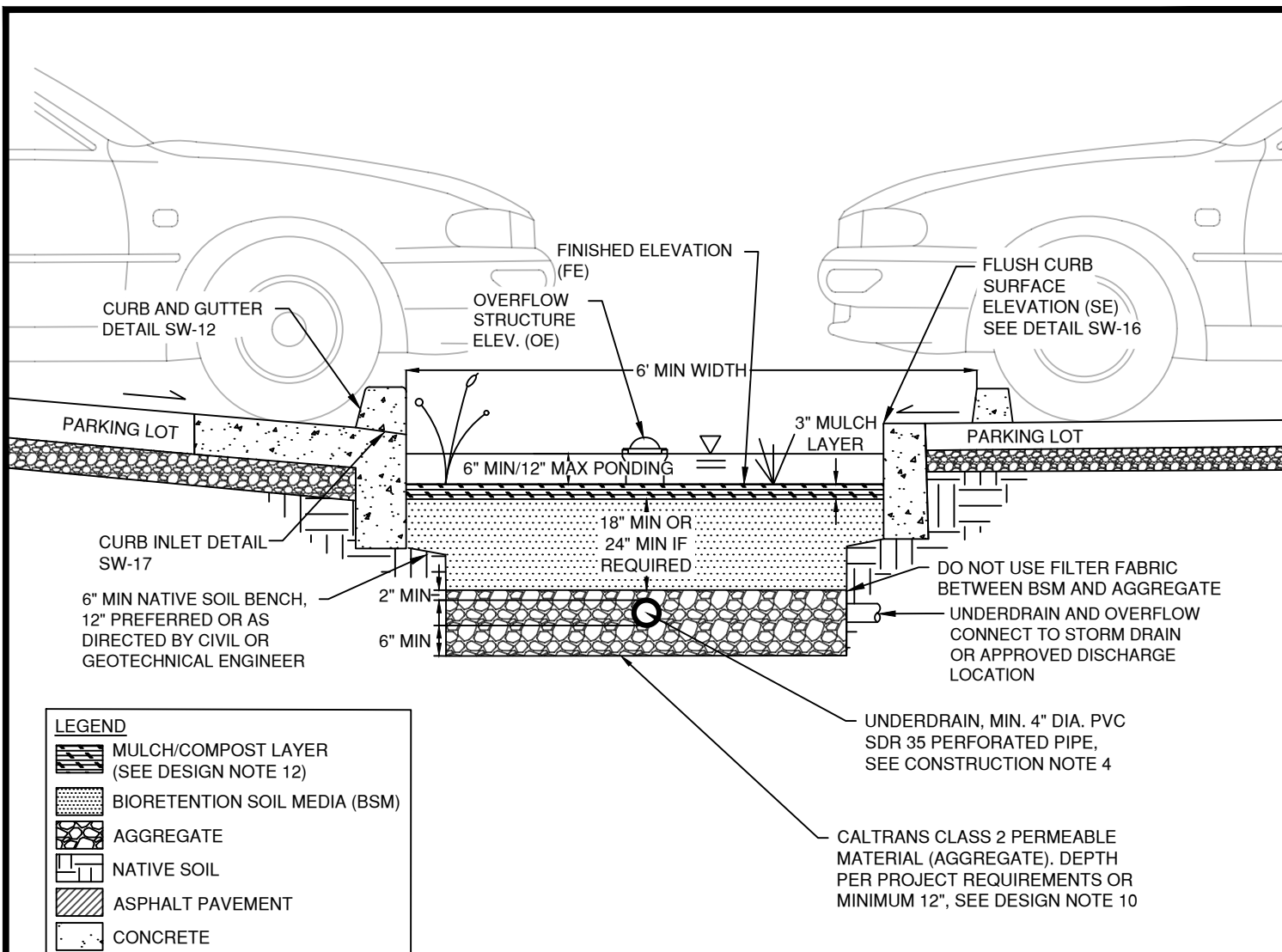
PARKING LOT SLOPE-SIDED  
BIORETENTION, NO UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-6A**

SHEET 2 OF 2



## LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

### PARKING LOT BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-7**

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE CAPPED, THREADED PVC CLEANOUT FOR UNDERDRAIN, 4" MIN. DIA. WITH SWEEP BEND.
8. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
9. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
10. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
11. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
14. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
15. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

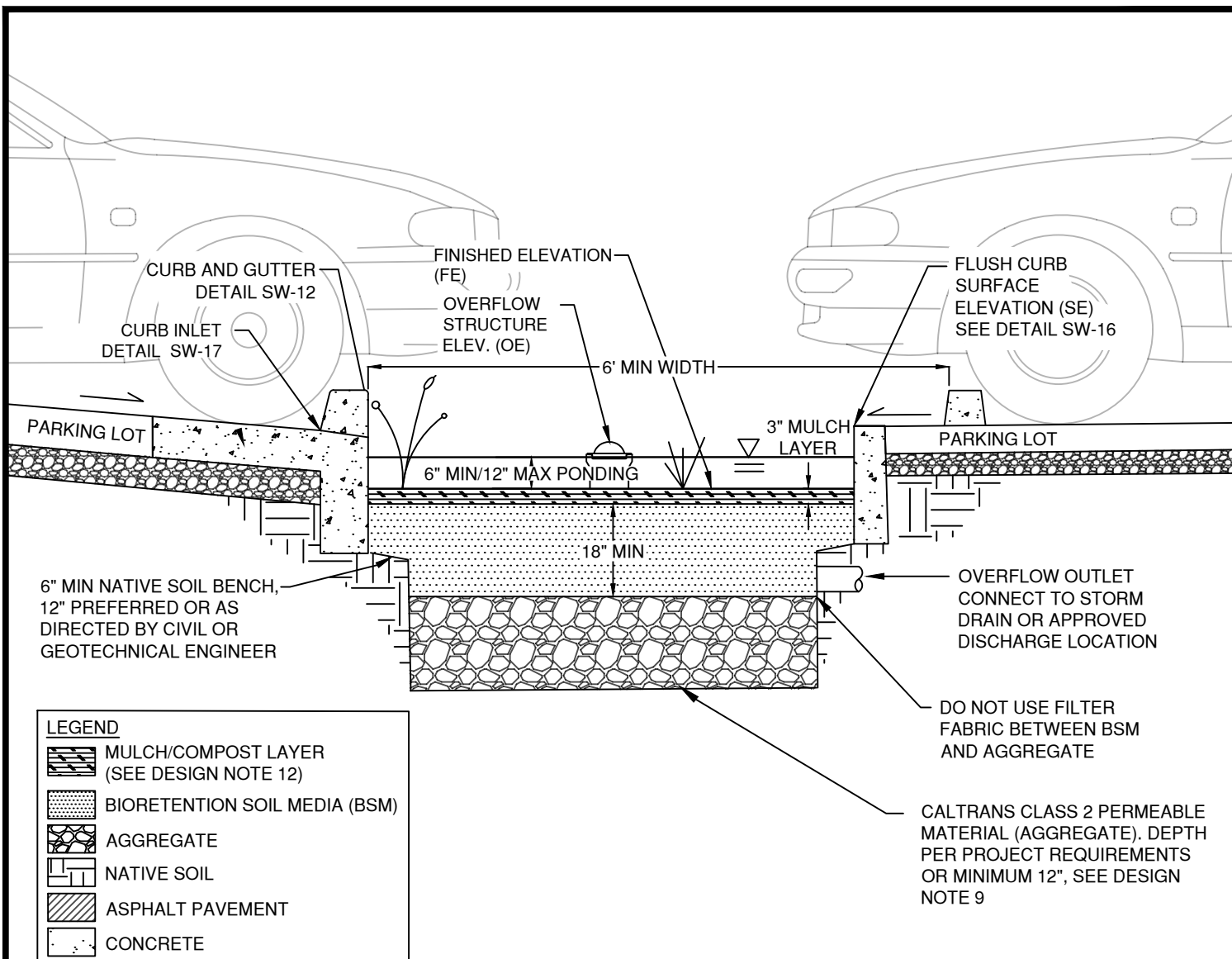
#### PARKING LOT BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, WITH UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-7**

SHEET 2 OF 2



## LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

### PARKING LOT BIORETENTION PLANTER BOX, NO UNDERDRAIN

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-7A**

SHEET 1 OF 2



#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIORETENTION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIORETENTION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. A VERTICAL LINER MAY BE USED FOR BIORETENTION FACILITIES TO PREVENT LATERAL FLOW AND TO SEPARATE THE NATIVE SOIL FROM THE BSM AND THE AGGREGATE, HOWEVER A HORIZONTAL LINER SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
7. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
9. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
10. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
11. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
14. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

PARKING LOT BIORETENTION PLANTER  
BOX, NO UNDERDRAIN

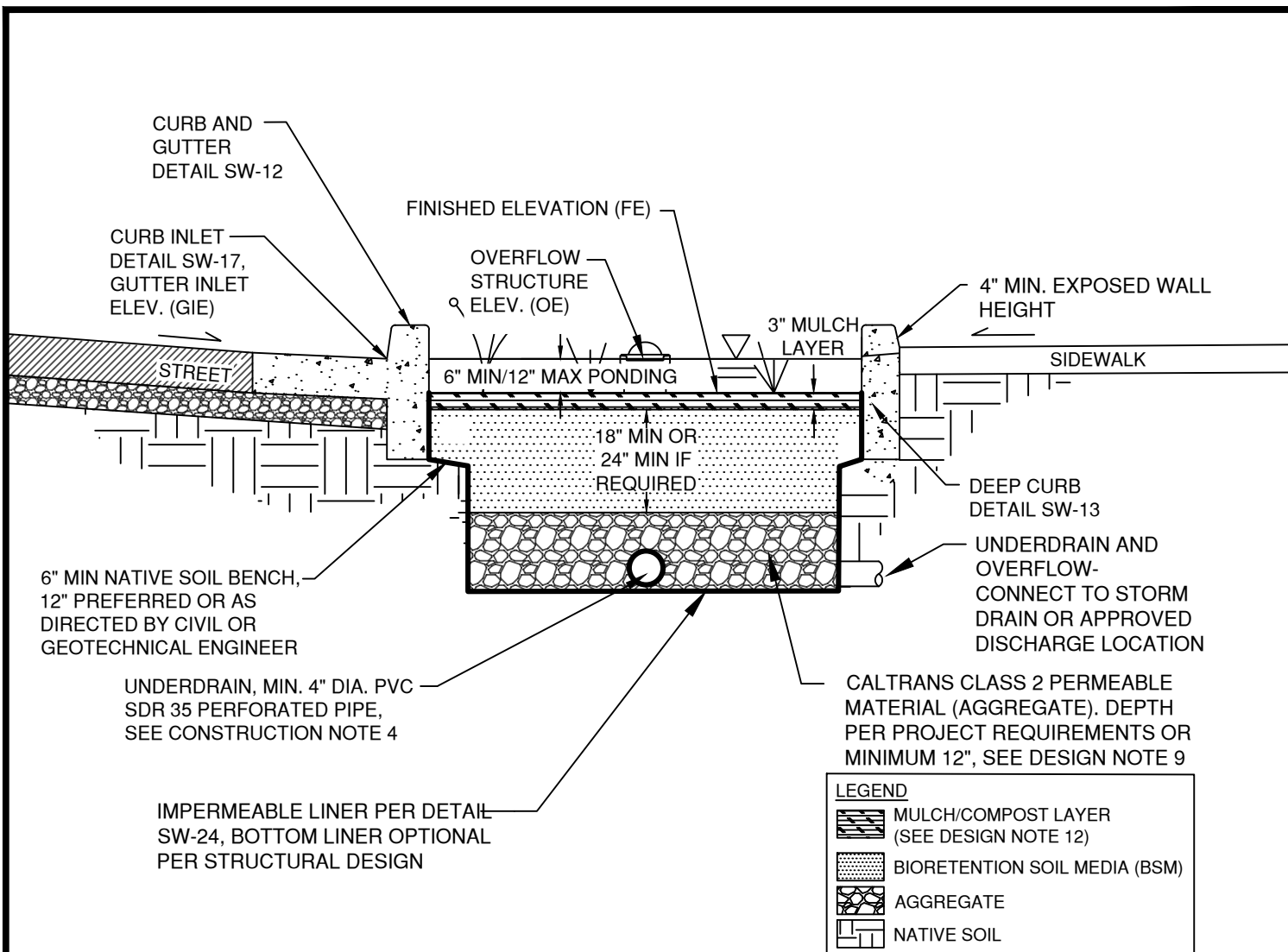
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-7A**

SHEET 2 OF 2





#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. MAINTAIN UNDISTURBED NATIVE SOIL BENCH TO SUPPORT ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD. SEQUENCE WORK TO CONSTRUCT CURBS BEFORE EXCAVATING BIOFILTRATION AREA FOR AGGREGATE AND BSM.
2. SCARIFY SUBGRADE BEFORE INSTALLING BIORETENTION AREA AGGREGATE AND BSM.
3. FACILITY EXCAVATION TO ALLOW FOR SPECIFIED AGGREGATE, BSM, AND MULCH DEPTHS TO ACHIEVE FINISHED ELEVATIONS ON CIVIL PLANS.
4. COMPACT EACH 6" LIFT OF BSM WITH LANDSCAPE ROLLER OR BY LIGHTLY WETTING. IF WETTING, LET DRY OVERNIGHT BEFORE PLANTING.
5. DO NOT WORK WITHIN BIOFILTRATION AREA DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
6. KEEP HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIOFILTRATION AREA LIMITS.
7. STORMWATER SHOULD BE DIRECTED AWAY FROM BIOFILTRATION UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE AND DRAINAGE AREA VEGETATION IS STABILIZED.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

BIOFILTRATION PLANTER BOX,  
NO PARKING

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-9

SHEET 1 OF 2

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. BIOFILTRATION FACILITY DESIGN SHOULD OPTIMIZE THE FLAT BOTTOM DIMENSIONS (I.E., WIDTH, LENGTH) TO MAXIMIZE THE FUNCTIONAL AREA OF THE FACILITY.
2. CAPTURE AND CONVEY OVERFLOW TO STORM DRAIN SYSTEM (DETAIL SW-22, SW-23). ALTERNATIVELY, CONVEY OVERFLOW TO APPROVED DISCHARGE LOCATION THROUGH OTHER OVERLAND METHODS (IE. CURB CUTS, SIDEWALK UNDERDRAIN, WEIR, ETC.).
3. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS AND OVERFLOW STRUCTURES ON CIVIL PLANS (FE,OE, GIE, SIE), PER DETAIL SW-18.
4. DUE TO SITE VARIABILITY, TO ENSURE THE LONG-TERM STRUCTURAL STABILITY OF THE BIOFILTRATION FACILITY AND ANY ADJACENT INFRASTRUCTURE CONSULT WITH A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER.
5. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE.
6. PROVIDE CAPPED, THREADED PVC CLEANOUT FOR UNDERDRAIN, 4" MIN. DIA. WITH SWEEP BEND.
7. PROVIDE A CLEAN-OUT/OBSERVATION PORT IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. ON LONGITUDINAL SLOPE, USE CHECK DAMS (DETAILS SW-20, SW-21)
9. USE AND DEPTH OF AGGREGATE DETERMINED BY FACILITY SIZING. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP CHOKING LAYER OF EITHER CALTRANS COURSE AGGREGATE 1/2" (NO. 4) OR 3/4" X (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
10. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM) SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
11. PLANT SELECTION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
12. MULCH PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
13. LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
14. AVOID DECORATIVE USE OF COBBLE THAT CAN INTERFERE WITH WITH INFILTRATION.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT



APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

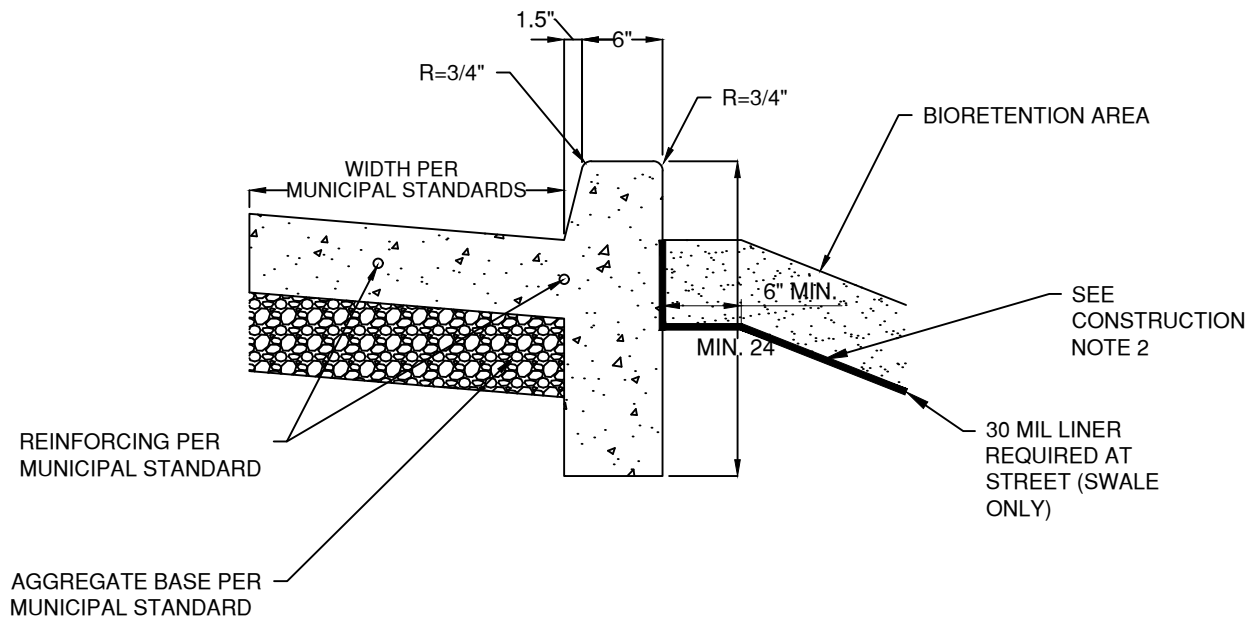
BIOFILTRATION PLANTER BOX,  
NO PARKING

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-9**

SHEET 2 OF 2



#### DESIGN NOTES

1. SPECIAL DESIGN CONSIDERATION OR STRUCTURAL REVIEW MAY BE REQUIRED FOR LONGER PLANTER WALL SPANS. STEEL REINFORCEMENT OR ADDITIONAL CONCRETE CHECK DAMS MAY BE NEEDED FOR STABILITY.
2. EDGE CONDITION WILL VARY FOR NEW AND RETROFIT PROJECTS. CURB, GUTTER, AND WALL DETAILS MAY BE MODIFIED BY CIVIL AND GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERS SUBJECT TO APPROVAL BY CITY ENGINEER.
3. CONCRETE AND EXPANSION JOINTS SHALL MEET THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE MUNICIPALITY.
4. STEEL REINFORCEMENT OR ADDITIONAL CONCRETE CHECK DAMS MAY BE NEEDED FOR STABILITY.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. FINISH ALL EXPOSED CONCRETE SURFACES.
2. LAYBACK SLOPE AS FLAT AS POSSIBLE UNTIL TOP WIDTH PRODUCES 1:1 SLOPE & 24" BOTTOM WIDTH. AS PLANTER GETS WIDER MAINTAIN 1:1 SLOPE AND INCREASE BOTTOM WIDTH WIDER THAN 24". ALTERNATIVE TRENCH WALL CONFIGURATIONS MAY BE PROPOSED BY THE PROJECT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER (I.E. VERTICAL SHORING, REINFORCED TRENCH SIDEWALL) THAT DO NOT REQUIRE SIDEWALK SUPPORT FROM THE LIGHTLY COMPACTED BSM.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

CURB AND GUTTER

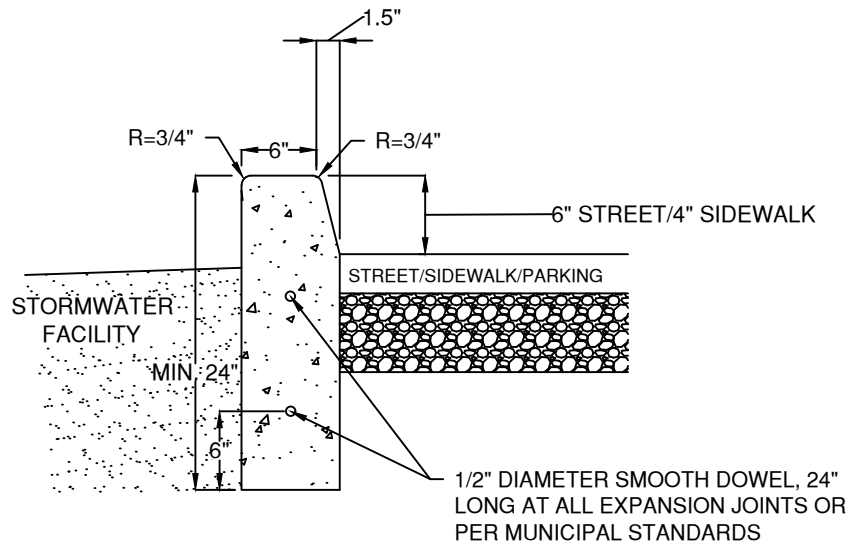
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-12

SHEET 1 OF 1





#### DESIGN NOTES

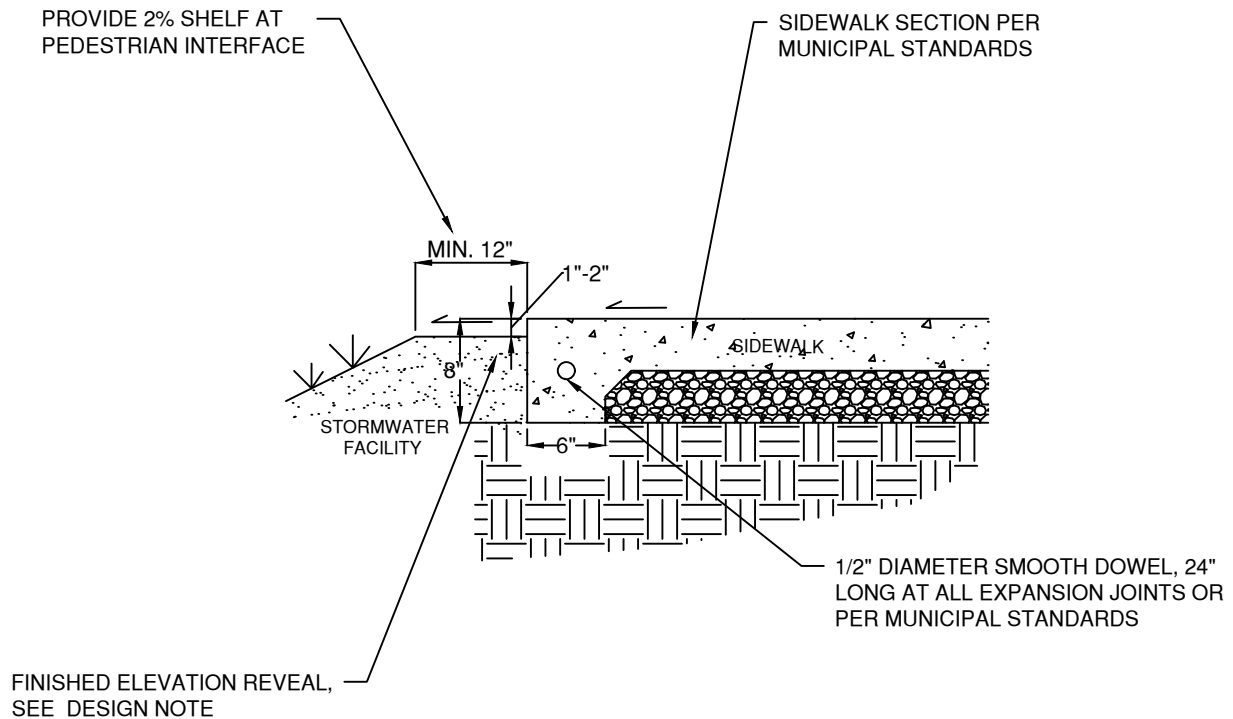
1. SPECIAL DESIGN CONSIDERATION OR STRUCTURAL REVIEW MAY BE REQUIRED FOR LONGER SWALE EDGE SPANS. STEEL REINFORCEMENT OR ADDITIONAL CONCRETE CHECK DAMS MAY BE NEEDED FOR STABILITY.
2. WHEN SIDEWALK DRAINS TO PLANTER, PROVIDE 4" - 6" WIDE NOTCH OPENINGS, 1" BELOW SIDEWALK, SLOPED TO FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION PLANTER DETAILS. SPACE OPENINGS TO CONVEY FLOWS. PROVIDE MINIMUM 2" COVER BETWEEN DRAINAGE NOTCH OPENING AND DOWELS.
3. CONCRETE AND EXPANSION JOINTS SHALL MEET THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE MUNICIPALITY.
4. STEEL REINFORCEMENT OR ADDITIONAL CONCRETE CHECK DAMS MAY BE NEEDED FOR STABILITY.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. FINISH ALL EXPOSED CONCRETE SURFACES.
2. LAYBACK SLOPE AS FLAT AS POSSIBLE UNTIL TOP WIDTH PRODUCES 1:1 SLOPE & 24" BOTTOM WIDTH. AS PLANTER GETS WIDER MAINTAIN 1:1 SLOPE AND INCREASE BOTTOM WIDTH WIDER THAN 24". ALTERNATIVE TRENCH WALL CONFIGURATIONS MAY BE PROPOSED BY THE PROJECT GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER (I.E. VERTICAL SHORING, REINFORCED TRENCH SIDEWALL) THAT DO NOT REQUIRE SIDEWALK SUPPORT FROM THE LIGHTLY COMPACTED BSM.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS

  <p>DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT</p>	<p>APPROVED BY:</p> <p>VERSION:</p> <p>08/31/2017</p>	<p>DEEP CURB</p> <p>USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION</p>	<p>STANDARD PLAN NO.</p> <p><b>SW-13</b></p> <p>SHEET 1 OF 1</p>
---	---	---	--



#### DESIGN NOTES

1. SPECIAL DESIGN CONSIDERATION OR STRUCTURAL REVIEW MAY BE REQUIRED FOR LONGER FACILITY EDGE SPANS. STEEL REINFORCEMENT OR ADDITIONAL CONCRETE CHECK DAMS MAY BE NEEDED FOR STABILITY.
2. FINISHED ELEVATION REVEAL - WHERE SIDEWALK CONVEYS SHEET FLOW TO FACILITY, A 1"-2" REVEAL SHOULD BE MAINTAINED BETWEEN SIDEWALK AND FACILITY FINISHED GRADE TO AVOID MULCH OR PLANT BUILDUP FROM BLOCKING FLOWS.
3. CONCRETE AND EXPANSION JOINTS SHALL MEET THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE MUNICIPALITY.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. FINISH ALL EXPOSED CONCRETE SURFACES.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

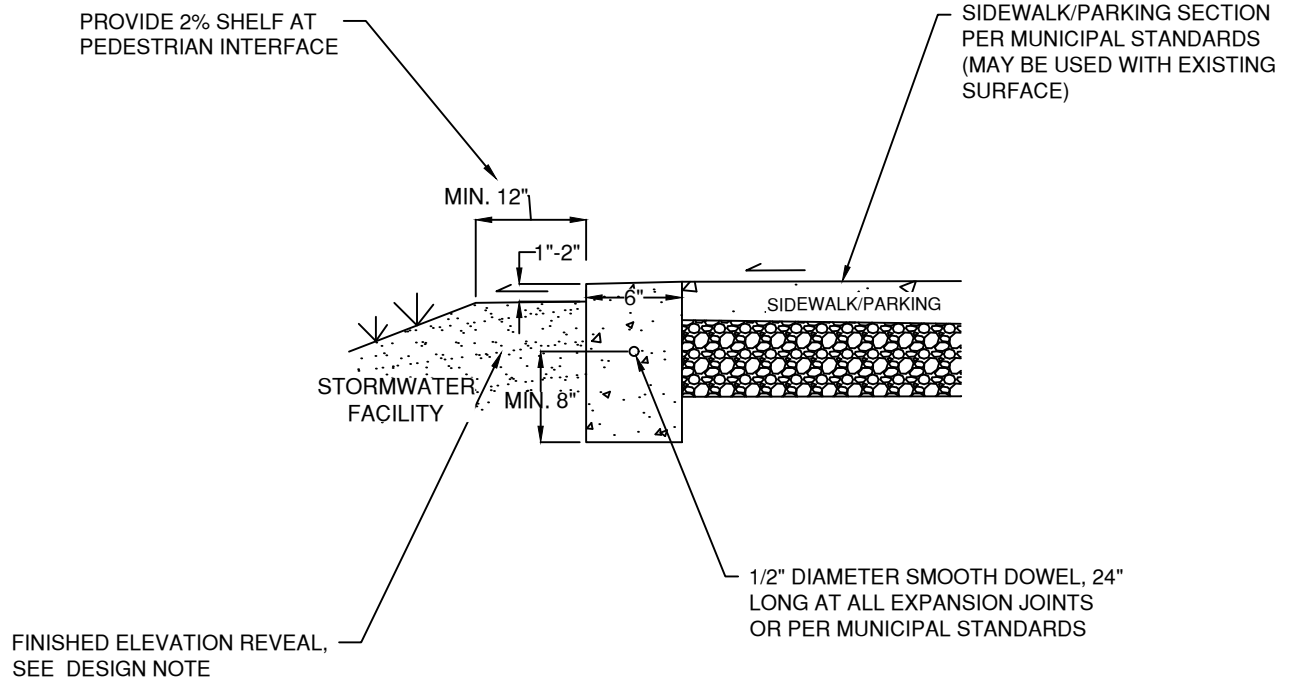
THICKENED EDGE SIDEWALK

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-14**

SHEET 1 OF 1



#### DESIGN NOTES

1. SPECIAL DESIGN CONSIDERATION OR STRUCTURAL REVIEW MAY BE REQUIRED FOR LONGER FACILITY EDGE SPANS. STEEL REINFORCEMENT OR ADDITIONAL CONCRETE CHECK DAMS MAY BE NEEDED FOR STABILITY.
2. EDGE CONDITION WILL VARY FOR PROJECTS. CURB DETAILS MAY BE MODIFIED BY CIVIL AND GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERS SUBJECT TO APPROVAL BY CITY ENGINEER.
3. CONCRETE AND EXPANSION JOINTS SHALL MEET THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE MUNICIPALITY.
4. FINISHED ELEVATION REVEAL AT SIDEWALK - WHERE SIDEWALK CONVEYS SHEET FLOW TO FACILITY, A 1"-2" REVEAL SHOULD BE MAINTAINED BETWEEN SIDEWALK AND FACILITY FINISHED GRADE TO AVOID MULCH OR PLANT BUILDUP FROM BLOCKING FLOWS AND REDUCE DROP AT PEDESTRIAN INTERFACE.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. FINISH ALL EXPOSED CONCRETE SURFACES.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

FLUSH CURB AT SIDEWALK

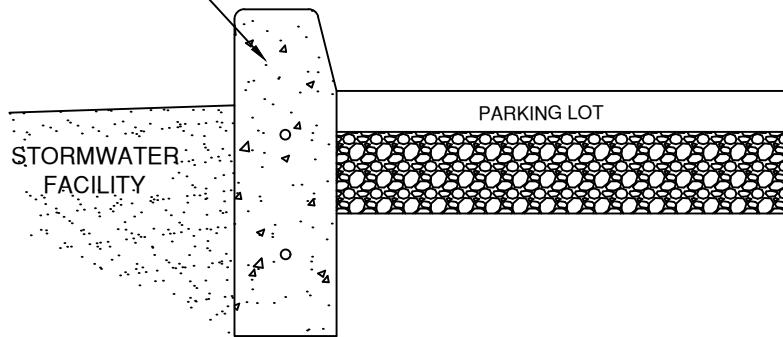
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-15**

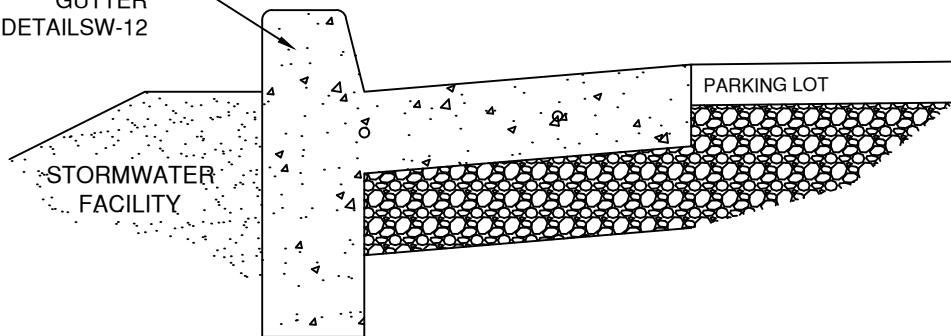
SHEET 1 OF 1

DEEP CURB  
DETAIL SW-13



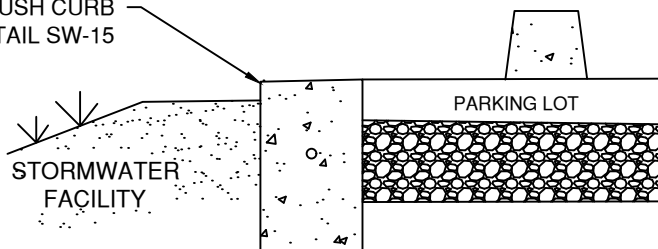
DEEP CURB

CURB AND  
GUTTER  
DETAIL SW-12



CURB AND GUTTER

FLUSH CURB  
DETAIL SW-15



FLUSH EDGE/WHEEL STOPS

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. WHEEL STOPS MAY BE USED ON NON-FLUSH DESIGNS TO KEEP CARS FROM OVERHANGING BIORETENTION FACILITY.
2. VEHICLE OVERHANG CAN BE USED TO REDUCE IMPERVIOUS PAVEMENT AREA.
3. WHERE VEHICLE OVERHANG IS UTILIZED SELECT LOW GROWING PLANTS THAT WILL TOLERATE SHADING.

#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

PARKING LOT EDGE OPTIONS

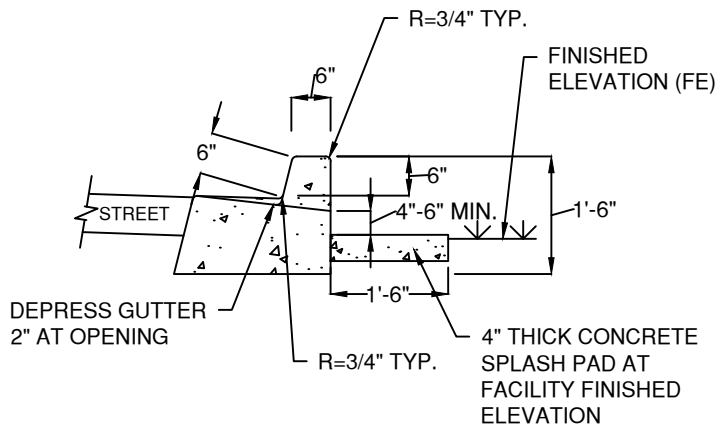
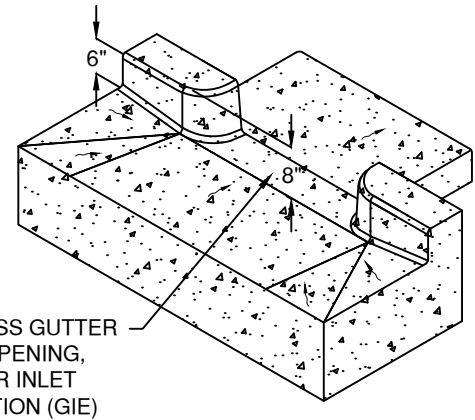
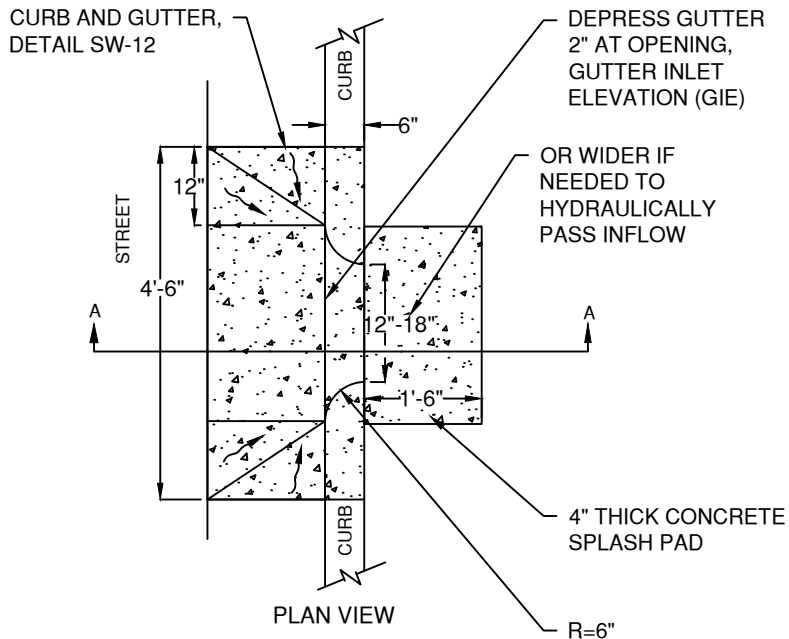
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-16

SHEET 1 OF 1





#### BIORETENTION DESIGN NOTES

1. FOR USE WITH STORMWATER FACILITIES WITH FLAT BOTTOMS.
2. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS ON PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, IE). SEE DETAIL SW-2, SW-2A, SW-4 OR SW-4A.
3. CURB AND WALL DETAILS MAY BE MODIFIED BY CIVIL AND GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERS SUBJECT TO APPROVAL BY CITY ENGINEER.
4. CURB HEIGHT MAY BE REDUCED TO 4-INCHES WHERE ADJACENT TO A SIDEWALK. SEE DETAILS SW-12 & SW-13.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. AFTER CONSTRUCTION PLACE SAND BAGS AT GUTTER OPENINGS TO KEEP STORM FLOWS FROM ENTERING FACILITY UNTIL VEGETATION IS ESTABLISHED.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

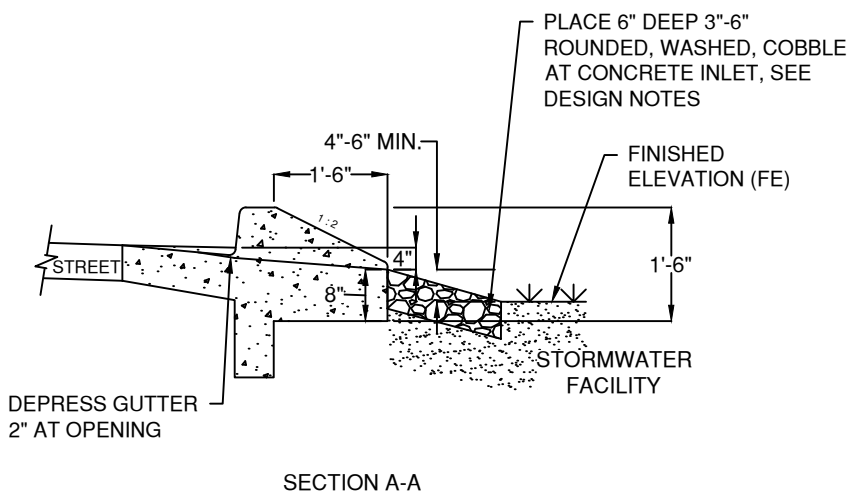
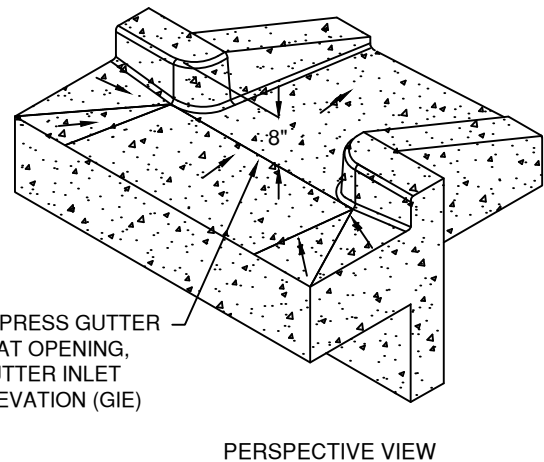
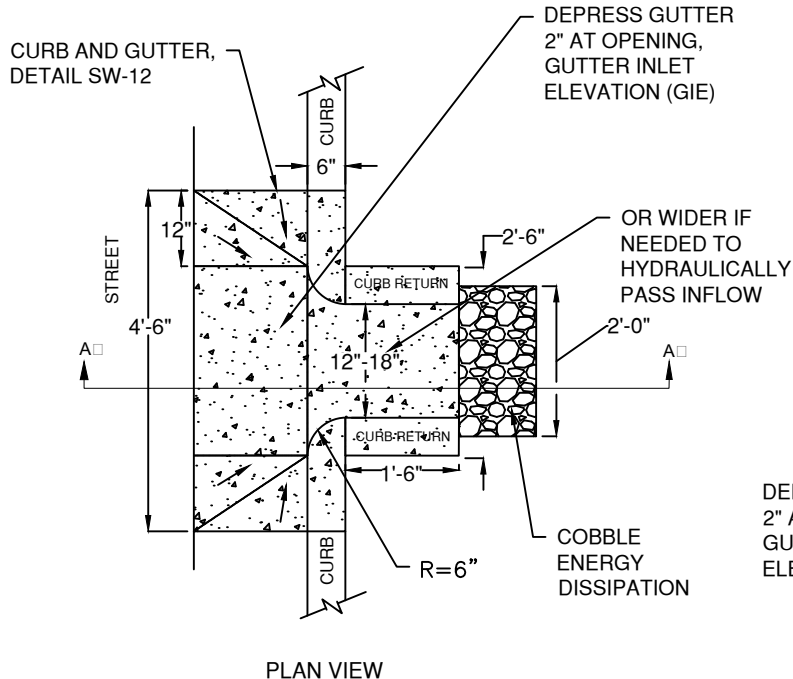
CURB CUT INLET FOR PLANTERS

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-17

SHEET 1 OF 1



#### BIORETENTION DESIGN NOTES

1. FOR USE WITH STORMWATER FACILITIES WITH SIDE SLOPES.
2. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS ON PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, IE). SEE DETAIL SW-1, SW-1A, SW-3 OR SW-3A.
3. CURB AND WALL DETAILS MAY BE MODIFIED BY CIVIL AND GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERS SUBJECT TO APPROVAL BY CITY ENGINEER.
4. WHERE INLET FLOW VELOCITY IS HIGH, EXTEND COBBLE INTO FACILITY, BUT AVOID EXCESSIVE USE.
5. CURB HEIGHT MAY BE REDUCED TO 4-INCHES WHERE ADJACENT TO A SIDEWALK. SEE DETAILS SW-12 & SW-13.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. AFTER CONSTRUCTION PLACE SAND BAGS AT GUTTER OPENINGS TO KEEP STORM FLOWS FROM ENTERING FACILITY UNTIL VEGETATION IS ESTABLISHED.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

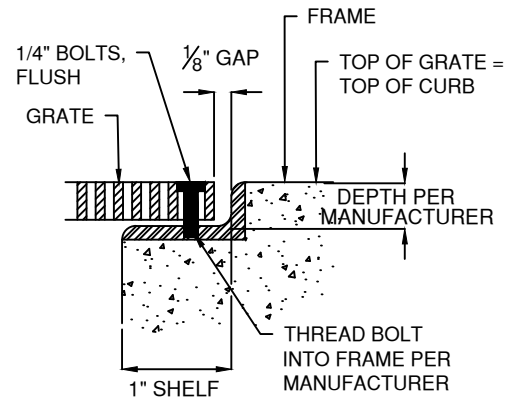
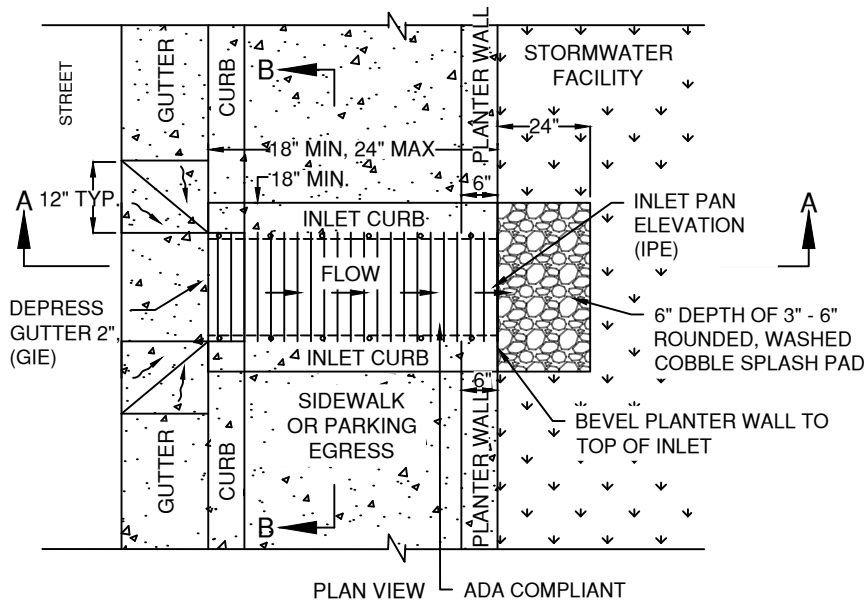
### CURB CUT INLET FOR SLOPE SIDED BIORETENTION SWALE

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

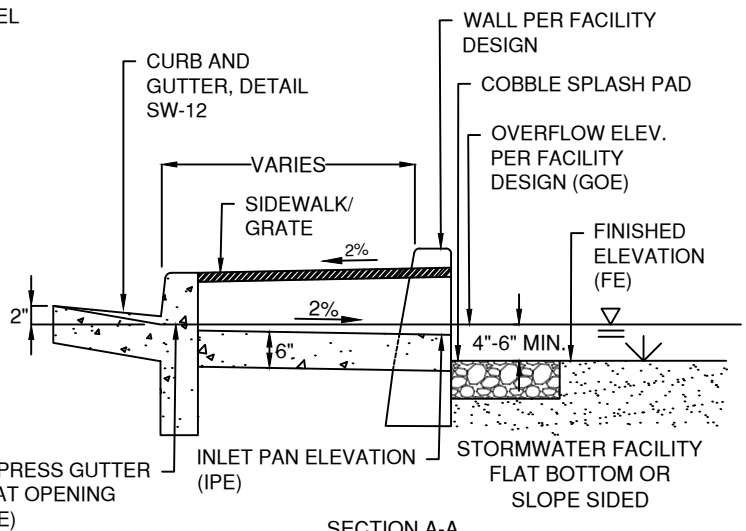
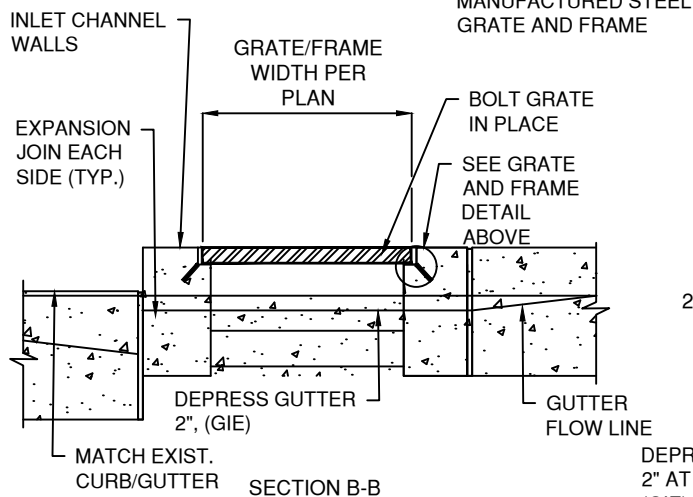
STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-18**

SHEET 1 OF 1



GRATE AND FRAME



#### BIORETENTION DESIGN NOTES

1. FOR USE WITH STORMWATER FACILITIES WITH SLOPED SIDES OR FLAT BOTTOMS.
2. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS ON PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, IPE). SEE DETAIL SW-2, SW-2A, SW-4 OR SW-4A.
3. REFER TO MUNICIPAL STANDARD DRAWINGS AND MATCH GUTTER PAN OF ADJACENT CURB AND GUTTER.
4. IF SLOPED SIDES, WHERE INLET FLOW VELOCITY IS HIGH, EXTEND COBBLE INTO FACILITY, BUT AVOID EXCESSIVE USE.
5. BASE MATERIAL FOR CURB, GUTTER, AND SIDEWALK PER MUNICIPAL STANDARDS.
6. GRATE AND FRAME SHALL SUPPORT H-20 LOADING (ALHAMBRA FOUNDRY A-1540/A-1551 OR EQUIVALENT).
7. SOLID COVER AND FRAME (ALHAMBRA FOUNDRY A-1430/A-1433 OR EQUIVALENT) MAY BE USED IN PLACE OF GRATE AND FRAME.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. AFTER CONSTRUCTION PLACE SAND BAGS AT GUTTER OPENINGS TO KEEP STORM FLOWS FROM ENTERING FACILITY UNTIL VEGETATION IS ESTABLISHED.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

INLET WITH GRATE

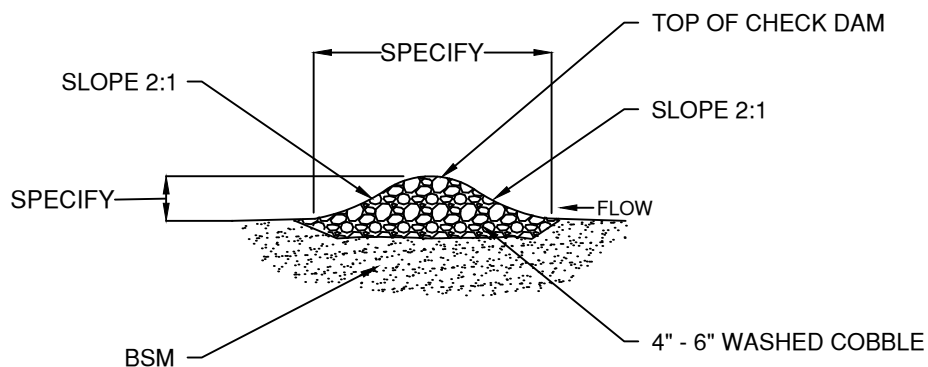
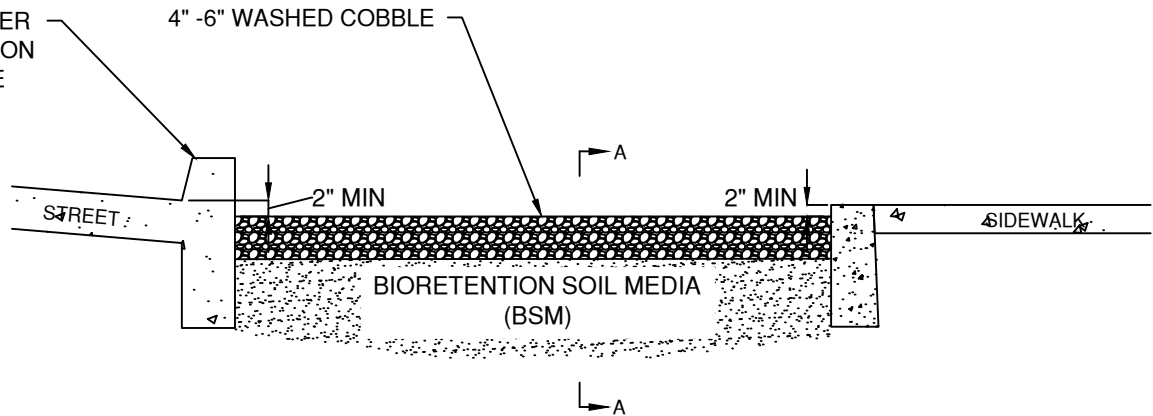
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-19

SHEET 1 OF 1

CURB AND GUTTER  
PER BIORETENTION  
WITH SIDESLOPE  
DETAIL



SECTION A-A

#### BIORETENTION DESIGN NOTES

1. FOR USE WITH STORMWATER FACILITIES WITH SLOPED SIDES.
2. BEST SUITED FOR FACILITIES WITH  $\leq 2\%$  LONGITUDINAL SLOPE.
3. PROVIDE ELEVATIONS AND STATIONING AND/OR DIMENSIONING FOR CHECK DAMS.
4. SPACE CHECK DAMS TO MAXIMIZE PONDING ACROSS ENTIRE CELL.
5. ENSURE THAT CHECK DAM ELEVATIONS DO NOT CAUSE STORMWATER TO OVERFLOW TO SIDEWALK.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. DO NOT WORK DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
2. KEEP ALL HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

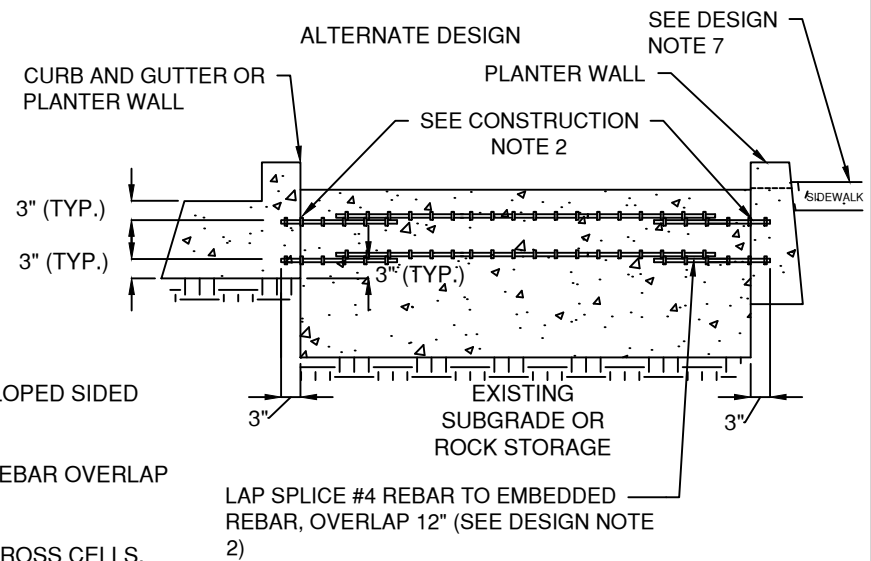
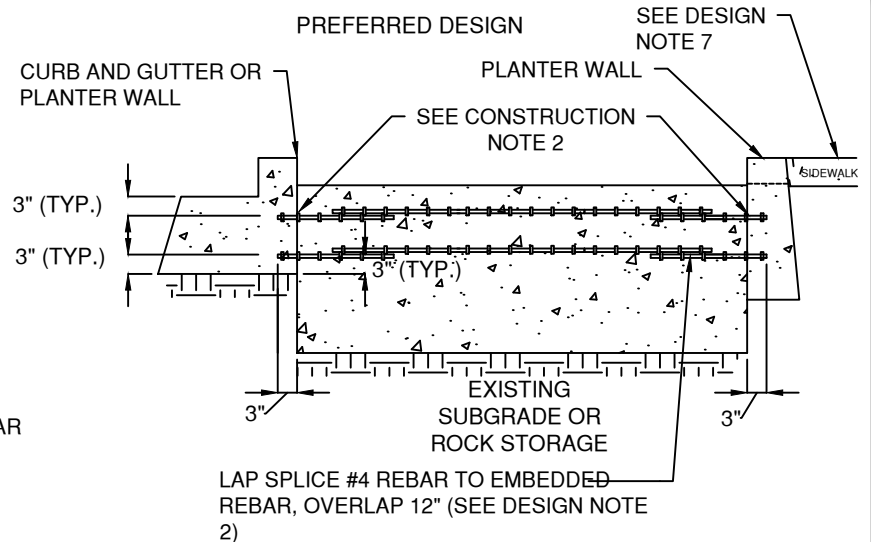
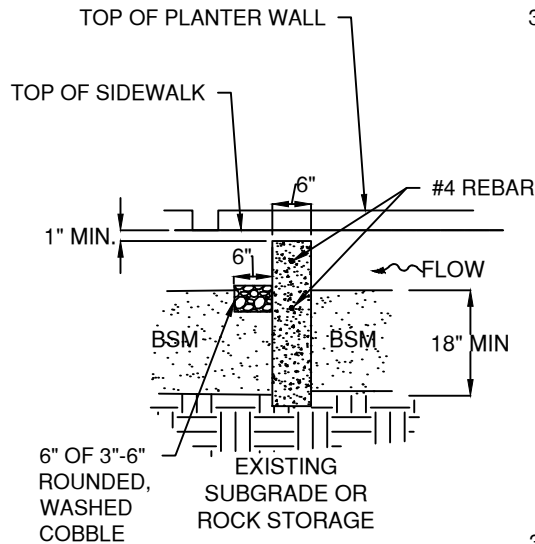
GRAVEL CHECK DAM

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-20**

SHEET 1 OF 1



#### BIORETENTION DESIGN NOTES

1. FOR USE WITH BIORETENTION PLANTERS OR SLOPED SIDED SWALES/RAIN GARDENS.
2. FOR CHECK DAMS LONGER THAN 12' SPECIFY REBAR OVERLAP LENGTH.
3. SPACE CHECK DAMS TO MAXIMIZE PONDING ACROSS CELLS.
4. PROVIDE ELEVATIONS AND STATIONING AND/OR DIMENSIONING FOR CHECK DAMS.
5. ENSURE THAT CHECK DAM ELEVATIONS DO NOT CAUSE STORMWATER TO OVERFLOW TO SIDEWALK.
6. SHOW PLANTER WALL EMBEDDED IN EXISTING SUBGRADE OR DRAINROCK.
7. PREFERRED DESIGN IS TO CONSTRUCT TOP OF SIDEWALK AT GRADE WITH TOP OF PLANTER WALL TO ALLOW RUNOFF TO SHEETFLOW INTO BIORETENTION PLANTER. IF CURB IS NEEDED, USE ALTERNATE DESIGN AND ENSURE TOP OF CONCRETE CHECK DAM IS A MINIMUM OF 1" BELOW BOTTOM OF CURB NOTCH.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. EMBED #3 REBAR 3" INTO CURB AND PLANTER WALL.
2. DO NOT WORK DURING RAIN OR UNDER WET CONDITIONS.
3. KEEP ALL HEAVY MACHINERY OUTSIDE BIORETENTION AREA LIMITS.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

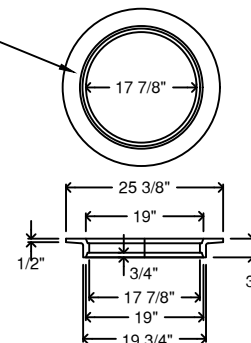
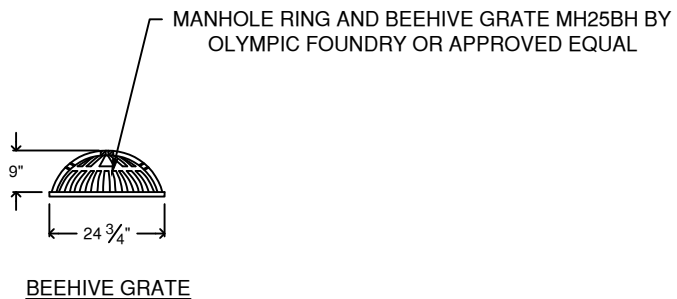
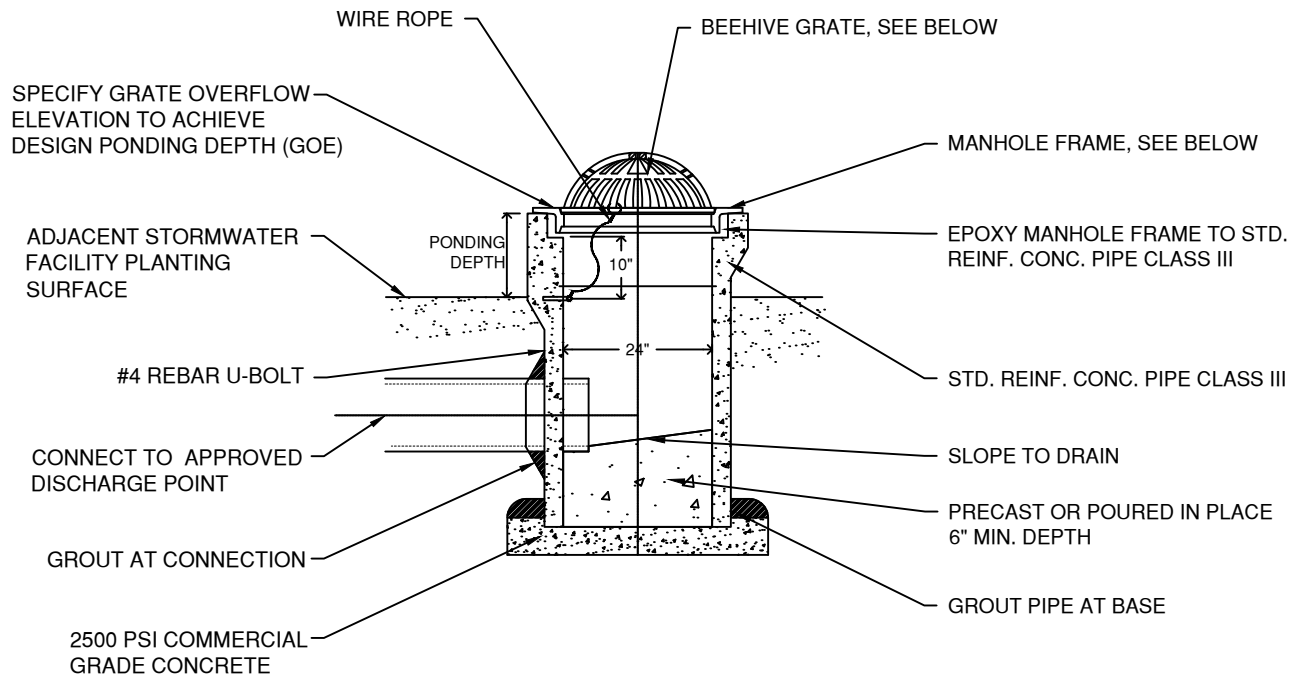
#### CONCRETE CHECK DAM

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

SW-21

SHEET 1 OF 1



24"x4" REVERSIBLE MANHOLE FRAME

#### DESIGN NOTES

1. PROVIDE GRATE OVERFLOW ELEVATION ON PLANS.
2. TO INCORPORATE FLEXIBILITY INTO DESIGN OVERFLOW ELEVATION OR CORRECT ELEVATION OF AN EXISTING STRUCTURE, INSTALL OVERFLOW COLLAR, PER DETAIL SW-22A.
3. IN PRIVATE SITES NOT IN CITY R/W THE PROJECT CIVIL ENGINEER MAY PROPOSE ALTERNATIVES FOR GRATE INSTALLATIONS USING ALTERNATIVE MANUFACTURER'S PRODUCT/CONFIGURATION.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. DO NOT ADJUST OVERFLOW GRATE ELEVATION, CONSTRUCT AS SHOWN ON PLANS.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

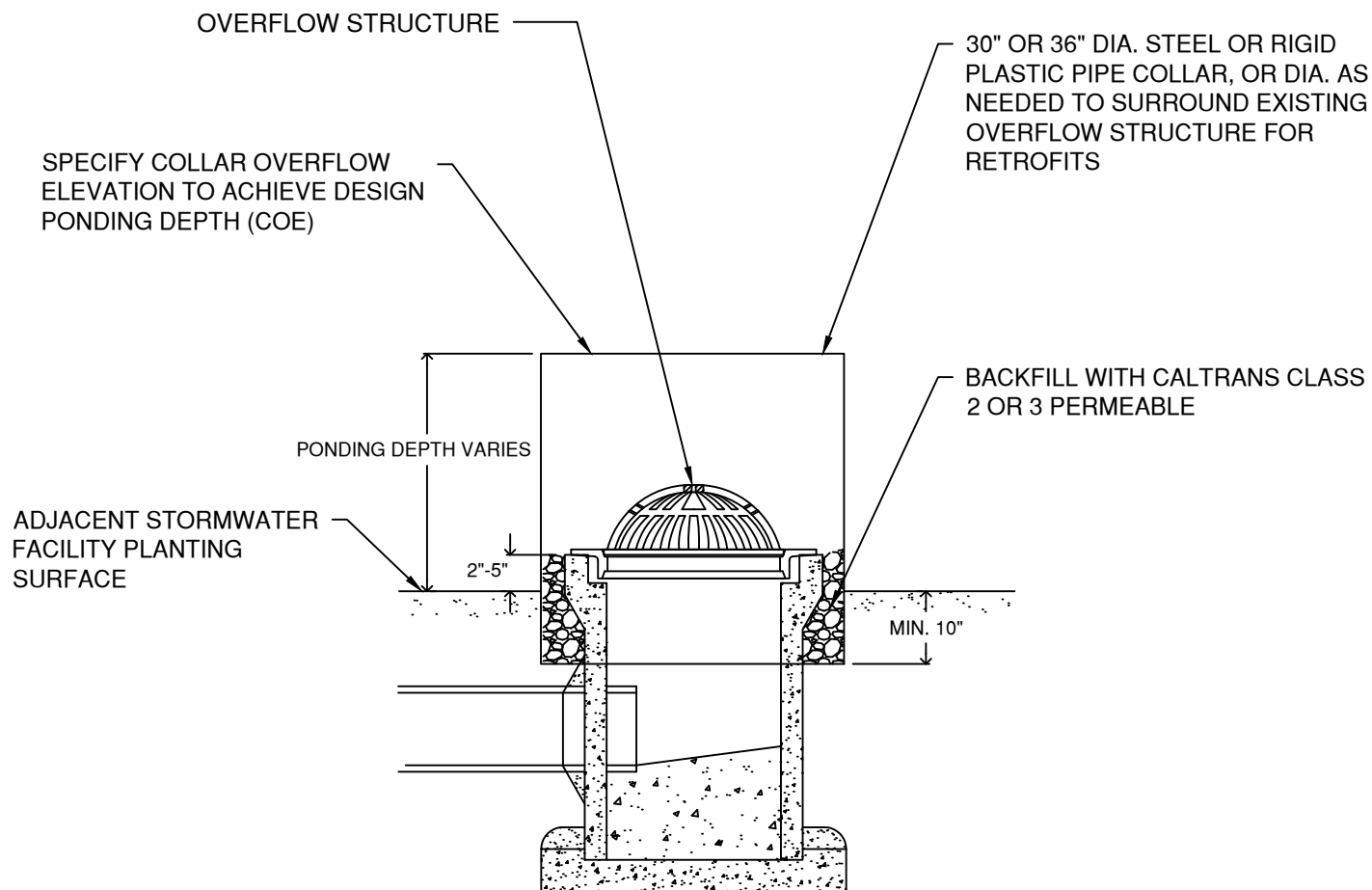
#### OVERFLOW STRUCTURE WITH BEEHIVE GRATE

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-22**

SHEET 1 OF 1



#### DESIGN NOTES

1. MAY BE USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH OVERFLOW STRUCTURES TO ALLOW FOR FIELD ADJUSTMENT OF OVERFLOW ELEVATION, OR AS RETROFIT TO CORRECT EXISTING STRUCTURE THAT DOES NOT ALLOW PONDING TO OCCUR.
2. PROVIDE COLLAR OVERFLOW ELEVATION (COE) ON PLANS.
3. PCC PIPE RISER EXTENSIONS MAY BE UTILIZED IN LIEU OF OVER FLOW STRUCTURE COLLAR.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. CENTER COLLAR ON OVERFLOW GRATE.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

## OVERFLOW STRUCTURE COLLAR

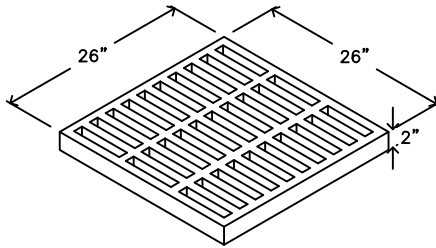
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

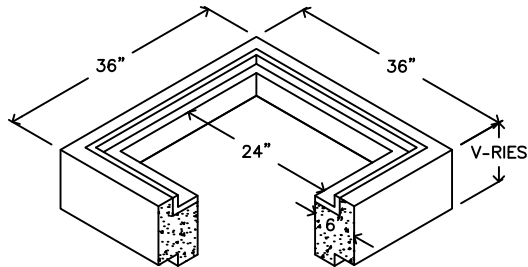
**SW-22A**

SHEET 1 OF 1

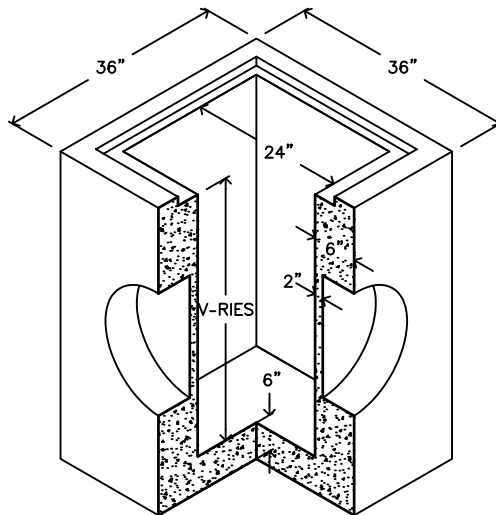
C.I. GRATE



C.I. FRAME  
EXTENSION



BOTTOM



#### DESIGN NOTES

1. PROVIDE GRATE OVERFLOW ELEVATION ON PLANS.
2. PROVIDE EXTENSION OVERFLOW ELEVATION (COE) ON PLANS.
3. ON PRIVATE SITES NOT IN CITY RIGHT-OF-WAY THE PROJECT CIVIL ENGINEER MAY PROPOSE ALTERNATIVES FOR GRATE INSTALLATIONS USING ALTERNATIVE MANUFACTURER'S PRODUCTION/CONFIGURATION.

#### CONSTRUCTION NOTES

1. DO NOT ADJUST OVERFLOW GRATE ELEVATION, CONSTRUCT AS SHOWN ON PLANS.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

### OVERFLOW STRUCTURE WITH SQUARE GRATE

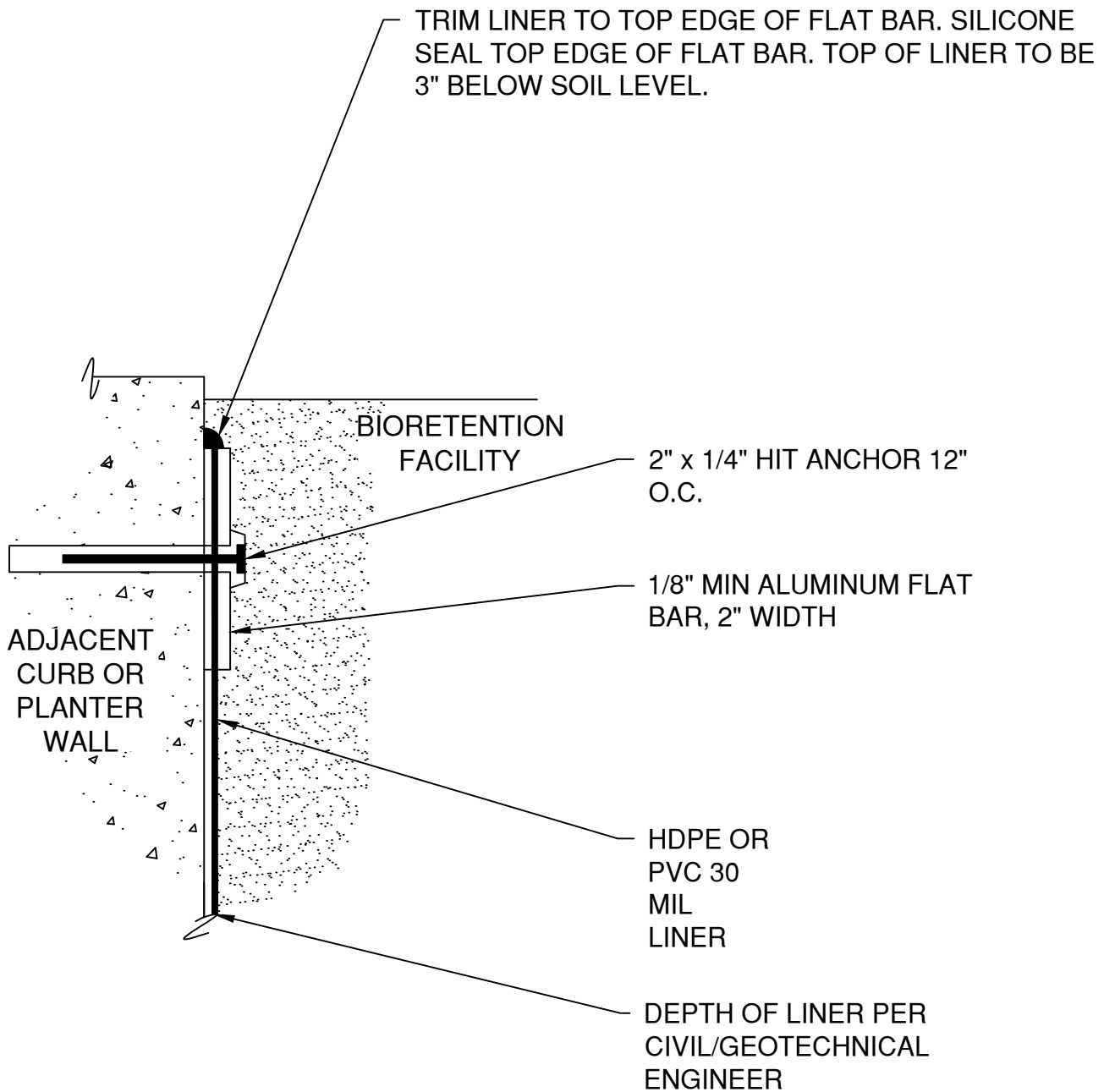
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-23**

SHEET 1 OF 1





LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

IMPERMEABLE LINER CONNECTION

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

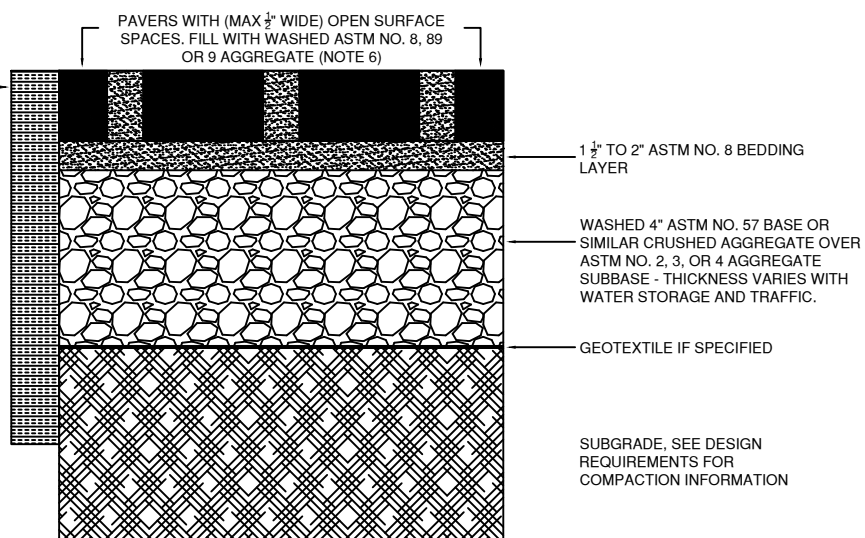
STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-24**

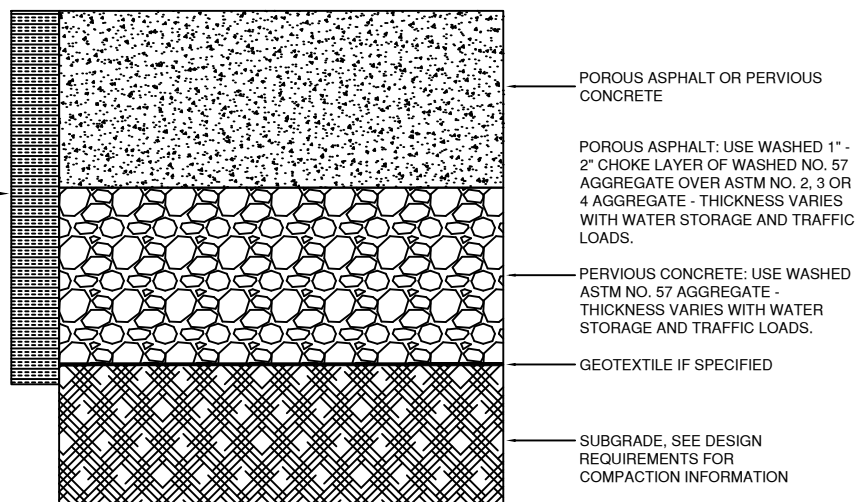
SHEET 1 OF 1

	RESIDENTIAL DRIVEWAY OR PEDESTRIAN ONLY	PRIVATE STREET, PARKING LOT	PUBLIC STREET OR FIRE LANE
PERVIOUS CONCRETE	4"	6"	8"
POROUS ASPHALT	3"	4"	6"
PERMEABLE INTERLOCKING PAVERS	2 $\frac{3}{8}$ "	3 $\frac{1}{8}$ "	3 $\frac{1}{8}$ "
ENGINEERING REQ'D	NO	YES	YES
COMPACTION REQ'D	NO	YES	95%

EDGE RESTRAINT  
AS SHOWN ON PLANS



EDGE RESTRAINT  
AS SHOWN ON PLANS



#### NOTES:

1. UNDERDRAIN TO REMOVE WATER THAT CANNOT BE INFILTRATED WITHIN 72 HOURS.
2. DESIGNS PROVIDED SHALL BE SIGNED & STAMPED BY A GEOTECHNICAL &/OR CIVIL ENGINEER REGISTERED IN THE STATE OF CALIFORNIA.
3. GEOTEXTILE USE AND SELECTION MAY BE DETERMINED BY A GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEER PER AASHTO M-288.
4. UNDERDRAIN AND ORIFICE CONFIGURATION SHALL BE BASED ON ENGINEERED DESIGN.

### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

PERVIOUS PAVEMENT

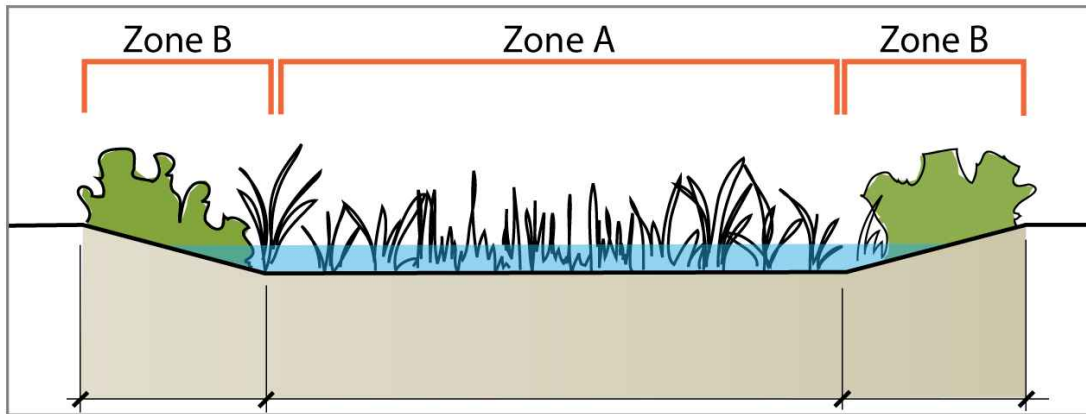
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

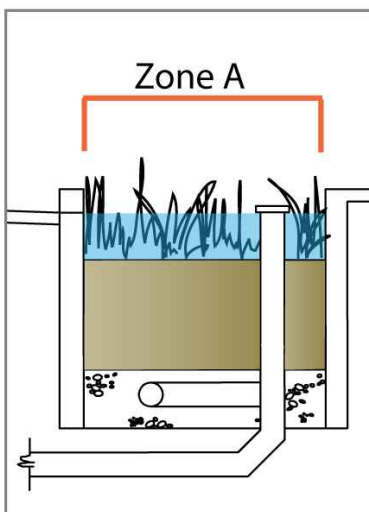
SW-25

SHEET 1 OF 1

**Varying slope and ponding levels:** Varying slope and ponding levels: This bioretention planting area has sloped edges. Plants in the bottom area will be inundated during storms (**Zone A**). Those planted on the sideslopes are above the level of ponding, but will experience seasonally wet conditions (**Zone B**).



**Uniform surface grade:** This stormwater planter has a flat bottom with consistent depth of ponding across the structure. All of the plants selected for this design must be tolerant of periodic inundation (**Zone A**).



#### LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:  
08/31/2017

#### PLANTING INUNDATION ZONES

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-26**

SHEET 1 OF 4

Trees	San Diego Co. Native - SD	California Native - CA	Non-Native - X	Landscape Position: 1 - Low1, 2 - Mid2, 3 - High3	Mature Size (height x width)	Irrigation Demands: High - H ■ Moderate - M Low - L ■ Rainfall Only - N	Light Requirements Sun - SU ■ Shade - SH Part Shade - PS	Season Evergreen - E, Deciduous - D Semi-Evergreen - SE	Coastal Exposure? Yes - Y	City of Imperial Beach Sunset Zone: 24
<i>Acer negundo</i> <i>californicum</i> <sup>4,5</sup>		SD		1	60'x60'	M-H	SU, PS	D		A2-3, 1-10, 12-24
<i>Cercis occidentalis</i> <sup>4</sup>		SD		1	10-18' x 10-18'	M	SU, PS	D		2-24
<i>Ilex vomitoria</i>		X		1	15-20' x 10-15'	H	SU, PS	E		4-9, 11-24
<i>Juglans californica</i>		SD		1	15-30' x 15-30'	N-L	SU	D		18-24
<i>Liquidambar styraciflua</i> <sup>5</sup>		X		1	60' x 20-25'	M-H	SU	D		3-9, 14-24
<i>Magnolia grandiflora</i> <sup>5</sup>		X		1	80' x 60'	H	SU, PS	E	Y	4-12, 14-24, H1-2
<i>Metasequoia glyptostroboides</i> <sup>5</sup>		X		1	90' x 20'	H	SU	D		A3, 3-10, 14-24
<i>Myrica californica</i>		CA		1	10-30 x 10-30'	M	SU	E	Y	4-9, 14-24
<i>Platanus acerifolia</i>		X		1	40-80' x 30-40'	M-H	SU	D		2-24
<i>Platanus racemosa</i> <sup>4,5</sup>		SD		1	30-80' x 20-50'	M-H	SU	D	Y	4-24
<i>Quercus agrifolia</i> <sup>4,5</sup>		SD		1	20-70' x 20-70'	N-L	SU	E	Y	7-9, 14-24
<i>Salix gooddingii</i> <sup>4,5</sup>		SD		1	20-40'x20-30'	H	SU	D		-
<i>Sambucus mexicana</i> <sup>4,5</sup>		SD		1	10-30' x 8-20'	M-H	SU, PS	SE		2-24, H1
<i>Taxodium spp.</i> <sup>5</sup>		X		1	50-70' x 15-30'	L-H	SU	D		2-10, 12-24
<i>Umbellularia californica</i> <sup>5</sup>		CA		1	20-25' x 20-25'	L-H	SU, PS, SH	E	Y	4-9, 14-24
<i>Washingtonia filifera</i> <sup>4,5</sup>		SD		1	60' x 20'	L-M	SU	E		8,9,10,11-24,H1-2

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS  
IMPERIAL BEACH

TITLE: ZONE A LID RECOMMENDED PLANT LIST

DESIGNED BY:

APPROVED:

DATE:

DRAWN BY:

CHECKED BY:

CITY ENGINEER: \_\_\_\_\_

STANDARD PLAN

SW-26

SHEET 2 OF 6

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS IMPE'RIAL BEACH																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
TITLE: ZONE A LID RECOMMENDED PLANT LIST								STANDARD PLAN																																																																																																																																																																																																																															
DESIGNED BY:	APPROVED:					DATE:		SW-26 SHEET 3 OF 6																																																																																																																																																																																																																															
DRAWN BY:	CITY ENGINEER: _____																																																																																																																																																																																																																																						
CHECKED BY:																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
<table><tr><td colspan="2">Perennials</td><td rowspan="16">San Diego Co. Native - SD California Native - CA Non-Native - X</td><td rowspan="16">Landscape Position: 1 - Low1, 2 - Mid2, 3 - High3</td><td rowspan="16">Mature Size (height x width)</td><td rowspan="16">Irrigation Demands: High - H ■ Moderate - M Low - L ■ Rainfall Only - N</td><td rowspan="16">Light Requirements Sun - SU ■ Shade - SH Part Shade - PS</td><td rowspan="16">Season Evergreen - E, Deciduous - D Semi-Evergreen - SE</td><td rowspan="16">Coastal Exposure? Yes - Y</td><td rowspan="16">City of Imperial Beach Sunset Zone: 24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Achillea millefolium</i> 4</td><td>Common Yarrow</td><td>SD</td><td>1</td><td>3' x 2'</td><td>L-M</td><td>SU</td><td>SE</td><td>Y</td><td>A1-A3, 1-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Anemopsis californica</i> 4</td><td>Yerba Mansa</td><td>SD</td><td>1</td><td>1'x2-4'</td><td>H</td><td>SU, PS, SH</td><td>D</td><td></td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td><i>Aquilegia formosa</i></td><td>Western Columbine</td><td>SD</td><td>2</td><td>1-3' x 1.5'</td><td>H</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>SE</td><td></td><td>A1-3, 1-11, 14-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Artemisia palmeri</i> 4</td><td>San Diego Sagewort</td><td>SD</td><td>2</td><td>2-3'x3'</td><td>H</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>SE</td><td>Y</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td><i>Asarum caudatum</i></td><td>Wild Ginger</td><td>CA</td><td>2</td><td>1' x 3'</td><td>H</td><td>SH</td><td>E</td><td></td><td>4-6, 14-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Epilobium californica</i> 4</td><td>California Fuchsia</td><td>CA</td><td>1</td><td>1-2'x3-5'</td><td>L-M</td><td>SU</td><td>SE</td><td></td><td>2-11, 14-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Fragaria chiloensis</i> 4</td><td>Beach Strawberry</td><td>CA</td><td>1</td><td>4-8" x spreading</td><td>H</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>E</td><td>Y</td><td>4-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Iris douglasiana</i></td><td>Pacific Coast Iris</td><td>CA</td><td>1</td><td>2' x 2'</td><td>M</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>E</td><td>Y</td><td>4-9, 14-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Iris missouriensis</i></td><td>Western Blue Flag Iris</td><td>SD</td><td>1</td><td>2' x 2'</td><td>M-H</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>D</td><td></td><td>1-10, 14-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Iva hayesiana</i> 4</td><td>San Diego Marsh Elder</td><td>SD</td><td>2</td><td>1' x 5'</td><td>N</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>SE</td><td>Y</td><td>17, 23-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Jaumea carnosa</i></td><td>Jaumea</td><td>SD</td><td>1</td><td>&lt;1' x spreading</td><td>H</td><td>SU</td><td>E</td><td></td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td><i>Limonium californicum</i></td><td>California Sea Lavender</td><td>SD</td><td>1</td><td>1-1.5' x &lt; 3' spreading</td><td>M-H</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>SE</td><td>Y</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td><i>Lobelia dunnii</i></td><td>Dunn's Lobelia</td><td>SD</td><td>2</td><td>1-1.5' x 1.5-3'</td><td>M-H</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>E</td><td>Y</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td><i>Mimulus cardinalis</i></td><td>Scarlet Monkey Flower</td><td>SD</td><td>1</td><td>2.5' x 2.5'</td><td>M-H</td><td>SU, PS, SH</td><td>D</td><td></td><td>2-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Polystichum munitum</i></td><td>Western Sword Fern</td><td>CA</td><td>2</td><td>2-4' x 2-4'</td><td>H</td><td>SH</td><td>E</td><td>Y</td><td>A3, 2-9, 14-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Potentilla glandulosa</i></td><td>Sticky Cinquefoil</td><td>SD</td><td>1</td><td>2' x 3'</td><td>M-H</td><td>SU, PS, SH</td><td>E</td><td>Y</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td><i>Ribes viburnifolium</i></td><td>Evergreen Currant</td><td>SD</td><td>3</td><td>3-6' x 12'</td><td>N-M</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>E</td><td>Y</td><td>5,7-9,14-17, 19-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Salicornia pacifica (or virginica)</i> 4</td><td>Pickleweed</td><td>SD</td><td>1</td><td>1-2' x spreading</td><td>H</td><td>SU</td><td>SE</td><td>Y</td><td>-</td></tr><tr><td><i>Salvia uliginosa</i></td><td>Bog Sage</td><td>X</td><td>2</td><td>4-6' x 3-4'</td><td>M-H</td><td>SU</td><td>E</td><td></td><td>6-9, 14-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Satureja douglasii</i></td><td>Yerba Buena</td><td>CA</td><td>2</td><td>&lt;1' x 3'</td><td>H</td><td>PS</td><td>E</td><td></td><td>4-9, 14-24</td></tr><tr><td><i>Satureja mimuloides</i></td><td>Monkeyflower Savory</td><td>CA</td><td>1</td><td>1-3' x 1-3'</td><td>M-H</td><td>SU, PS</td><td>D</td><td></td><td>-</td></tr></table>												Perennials		San Diego Co. Native - SD California Native - CA Non-Native - X	Landscape Position: 1 - Low1, 2 - Mid2, 3 - High3	Mature Size (height x width)	Irrigation Demands: High - H ■ Moderate - M Low - L ■ Rainfall Only - N	Light Requirements Sun - SU ■ Shade - SH Part Shade - PS	Season Evergreen - E, Deciduous - D Semi-Evergreen - SE	Coastal Exposure? Yes - Y	City of Imperial Beach Sunset Zone: 24	<i>Achillea millefolium</i> 4	Common Yarrow	SD	1	3' x 2'	L-M	SU	SE	Y	A1-A3, 1-24	<i>Anemopsis californica</i> 4	Yerba Mansa	SD	1	1'x2-4'	H	SU, PS, SH	D		-	<i>Aquilegia formosa</i>	Western Columbine	SD	2	1-3' x 1.5'	H	SU, PS	SE		A1-3, 1-11, 14-24	<i>Artemisia palmeri</i> 4	San Diego Sagewort	SD	2	2-3'x3'	H	SU, PS	SE	Y	-	<i>Asarum caudatum</i>	Wild Ginger	CA	2	1' x 3'	H	SH	E		4-6, 14-24	<i>Epilobium californica</i> 4	California Fuchsia	CA	1	1-2'x3-5'	L-M	SU	SE		2-11, 14-24	<i>Fragaria chiloensis</i> 4	Beach Strawberry	CA	1	4-8" x spreading	H	SU, PS	E	Y	4-24	<i>Iris douglasiana</i>	Pacific Coast Iris	CA	1	2' x 2'	M	SU, PS	E	Y	4-9, 14-24	<i>Iris missouriensis</i>	Western Blue Flag Iris	SD	1	2' x 2'	M-H	SU, PS	D		1-10, 14-24	<i>Iva hayesiana</i> 4	San Diego Marsh Elder	SD	2	1' x 5'	N	SU, PS	SE	Y	17, 23-24	<i>Jaumea carnosa</i>	Jaumea	SD	1	<1' x spreading	H	SU	E		-	<i>Limonium californicum</i>	California Sea Lavender	SD	1	1-1.5' x < 3' spreading	M-H	SU, PS	SE	Y	-	<i>Lobelia dunnii</i>	Dunn's Lobelia	SD	2	1-1.5' x 1.5-3'	M-H	SU, PS	E	Y	-	<i>Mimulus cardinalis</i>	Scarlet Monkey Flower	SD	1	2.5' x 2.5'	M-H	SU, PS, SH	D		2-24	<i>Polystichum munitum</i>	Western Sword Fern	CA	2	2-4' x 2-4'	H	SH	E	Y	A3, 2-9, 14-24	<i>Potentilla glandulosa</i>	Sticky Cinquefoil	SD	1	2' x 3'	M-H	SU, PS, SH	E	Y	-	<i>Ribes viburnifolium</i>	Evergreen Currant	SD	3	3-6' x 12'	N-M	SU, PS	E	Y	5,7-9,14-17, 19-24	<i>Salicornia pacifica (or virginica)</i> 4	Pickleweed	SD	1	1-2' x spreading	H	SU	SE	Y	-	<i>Salvia uliginosa</i>	Bog Sage	X	2	4-6' x 3-4'	M-H	SU	E		6-9, 14-24	<i>Satureja douglasii</i>	Yerba Buena	CA	2	<1' x 3'	H	PS	E		4-9, 14-24	<i>Satureja mimuloides</i>	Monkeyflower Savory	CA	1	1-3' x 1-3'	M-H	SU, PS	D		-
Perennials		San Diego Co. Native - SD California Native - CA Non-Native - X	Landscape Position: 1 - Low1, 2 - Mid2, 3 - High3	Mature Size (height x width)	Irrigation Demands: High - H ■ Moderate - M Low - L ■ Rainfall Only - N	Light Requirements Sun - SU ■ Shade - SH Part Shade - PS	Season Evergreen - E, Deciduous - D Semi-Evergreen - SE	Coastal Exposure? Yes - Y	City of Imperial Beach Sunset Zone: 24																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Achillea millefolium</i> 4	Common Yarrow									SD	1	3' x 2'	L-M									SU	SE	Y	A1-A3, 1-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Anemopsis californica</i> 4	Yerba Mansa									SD	1	1'x2-4'	H									SU, PS, SH	D		-																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Aquilegia formosa</i>	Western Columbine									SD	2	1-3' x 1.5'	H									SU, PS	SE		A1-3, 1-11, 14-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Artemisia palmeri</i> 4	San Diego Sagewort									SD	2	2-3'x3'	H									SU, PS	SE	Y	-																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Asarum caudatum</i>	Wild Ginger									CA	2	1' x 3'	H									SH	E		4-6, 14-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Epilobium californica</i> 4	California Fuchsia									CA	1	1-2'x3-5'	L-M									SU	SE		2-11, 14-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Fragaria chiloensis</i> 4	Beach Strawberry									CA	1	4-8" x spreading	H									SU, PS	E	Y	4-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Iris douglasiana</i>	Pacific Coast Iris									CA	1	2' x 2'	M									SU, PS	E	Y	4-9, 14-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Iris missouriensis</i>	Western Blue Flag Iris									SD	1	2' x 2'	M-H									SU, PS	D		1-10, 14-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Iva hayesiana</i> 4	San Diego Marsh Elder									SD	2	1' x 5'	N									SU, PS	SE	Y	17, 23-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Jaumea carnosa</i>	Jaumea									SD	1	<1' x spreading	H									SU	E		-																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Limonium californicum</i>	California Sea Lavender									SD	1	1-1.5' x < 3' spreading	M-H									SU, PS	SE	Y	-																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Lobelia dunnii</i>	Dunn's Lobelia									SD	2	1-1.5' x 1.5-3'	M-H									SU, PS	E	Y	-																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Mimulus cardinalis</i>	Scarlet Monkey Flower									SD	1	2.5' x 2.5'	M-H									SU, PS, SH	D		2-24																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Polystichum munitum</i>	Western Sword Fern									CA	2	2-4' x 2-4'	H	SH	E	Y	A3, 2-9, 14-24																																																																																																																																																																																																																						
<i>Potentilla glandulosa</i>	Sticky Cinquefoil	SD	1	2' x 3'	M-H	SU, PS, SH	E	Y	-																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Ribes viburnifolium</i>	Evergreen Currant	SD	3	3-6' x 12'	N-M	SU, PS	E	Y	5,7-9,14-17, 19-24																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Salicornia pacifica (or virginica)</i> 4	Pickleweed	SD	1	1-2' x spreading	H	SU	SE	Y	-																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Salvia uliginosa</i>	Bog Sage	X	2	4-6' x 3-4'	M-H	SU	E		6-9, 14-24																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Satureja douglasii</i>	Yerba Buena	CA	2	<1' x 3'	H	PS	E		4-9, 14-24																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
<i>Satureja mimuloides</i>	Monkeyflower Savory	CA	1	1-3' x 1-3'	M-H	SU, PS	D		-																																																																																																																																																																																																																														

Perennials	<i>Sisyrinchium bellum</i> 4	Blue-eyed Grass	San Diego Co. Native - SD	California Native - CA	Non-Native - X	Landscape Position: 1 - Low1, 2 - Mid2, 3 - High3	Mature Size (height x width)	Irrigation Demands: High - H ■ Moderate - M Low - L ■ Rainfall Only - N	Light Requirements Sun - SU ■ Shade - SH Part Shade - PS	Season Evergreen - E, Deciduous - D Semi-Evergreen - SE	Coastal Exposure? Yes - Y	City of Imperial Beach Sunset Zone: 24
	<i>Trifolium wormskoldii</i>	Coast Clover	SD	SD	SD	1	2' x spreading	H	SU	D		-
	<i>Salicornia pacifica</i> (or <i>virginica</i> ) 4	Pickleweed	SD	SD	SD	1	1-2' x spreading 4-6' x 3-4'	H	SU	SE	Y	-
	<i>Salvia uliginosa</i>	Bog Sage	X	X	X	2	4-6' x 3-4'	M-H	SU	E		6-9, 14-24
	<i>Satureja douglasii</i>	Yerba Buena	CA	CA	CA	2	<1' x 3'	H	PS	E		4-9, 14-24
	<i>Satureja mimuloides</i>	Monkeyflower Savory	CA	CA	CA	1	1-3' x 1-3'	M-H	SU, PS	D		-
	<i>Sisyrinchium bellum</i> 4	Blue-eyed Grass	SD	SD	SD	2	6-18" x 6-18"	M-H	SU, PS	E	Y	2-9, 14-24
	<i>Trifolium wormskoldii</i>	Coast Clover	SD	SD	SD	1	2' x spreading	H	SU	D		-

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS  
IMPERIAL BEACH

TITLE: ZONE A LID RECOMMENDED PLANT LIST

DESIGNED BY:

APPROVED:

DATE:

DRAWN BY:

CHECKED BY:

CITY ENGINEER: \_\_\_\_\_

STANDARD PLAN

SW-26

SHEET 4 OF 6



DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS  
IMPERIAL BEACH

TITLE: ZONE A LID RECOMMENDED PLANT LIST

STANDARD PLAN

DESIGNED BY:

APPROVED:

DATE:

DRAWN BY:

CHECKED BY:

CITY ENGINEER: \_\_\_\_\_

SW-26

SHEET 5 OF 6

Grasses & Grass-Like Plants		San Diego Co. Native - SD	California Native - CA	Non-Native - X	Landscape Position: 1 - Low1, 2 - Mid2, 3 - High3	Mature Size (height x width)	Irrigation Demands: High - H ■ Moderate - M Low - L ■ Rainfall Only - N	Light Requirements Sun - SU ■ Shade - SH Part Shade - PS	Season Evergreen - E, Deciduous - D Semi-Evergreen - SE	Coastal Exposure? Yes - Y	City of Imperial Beach Sunset Zone: 24
<i>Buchloe dactyloides</i> 'UC Verde'	'UC Verde' Buffalo grass	X			1	6-8" x spreading	L-H	SU	D		-
<i>Carex praegracilis</i>	California Field Sedge	SD			1	1'-2" x spreading	M-H	SU, PS	E	Y	-
<i>Carex pansa</i>	California Meadow Sedge	CA			1	6-8" x spreading	M-H	SU, PS	SE	Y	7-9, 11-24
<i>Carex spissa</i> <sup>4</sup>	San Diego Sedge	SD			1	5' x 6'	H	SU, PS	SE	Y	7-9, 14-17, 19, 24
<i>Carex subfusca</i>	Rusty Sedge	SD			1	6-8" x spreading	M	SU, PS, SH	SE		7-9, 11-24
<i>Chondropetalum tectorum</i>	Small Cape Rush	X			1	3-4' x 3-4'	M-H	SU, PS	E	Y	8-9, 14-24
<i>Distichlis spicata</i> <sup>4</sup>	Salt Grass	SD			1	1' x 3'	M-H	SU, PS	D	Y	-
<i>Eleocharis macrostachya</i> <sup>4</sup>	Common Spike Rush	SD			1	1-3' x 2'	H	SU, PS	E	Y	-
<i>Equisetum hyemale</i> ssp. affine	Horsetail Reed	SD			1	4' x spreading	H	SU, PS	E		1-24
<i>Festuca californica</i>	California Fescue	CA			1	2-3' x 1-2'	M-H	SU, PS	E	Y	4-9, 14-24
<i>Festuca rubra</i> 'Molate'	Molate Red Fescue	CA			1	1-2' x spreading	H	SU, PS	E		A2-3, 1-10, 14-24
<i>Juncus effusus</i>	Soft Rush	SD			1	2.5' x 2.5'	M-H	SU, PS	E		1-24, H1
<i>Juncus mexicanus</i> <sup>4</sup>	Mexican Rush	SD			1	2' x 2'	M-H	SU, PS	E		-
<i>Juncus patens</i> <sup>4</sup>	California Gray Rush	CA			1	2' x 2'	L-H	SU, PS	E		4-9, 14-24
<i>Leymus triticoides</i>	Creeping Wildrye	CA			1	1.5'-4.5'	L-M	SU, PS	E	Y	-
<i>Muhlenbergia rigens</i> <sup>4</sup>	Deer Grass	SD			1	2-4' x 3-4'	L	SU	E		4-24
<i>Nassella pulchra</i>	Purple Needlegrass	CA			2	3' x 2'	N-L	SU	D		5-9, 11, 14-24
<i>Schoenoplectus californicus</i> <sup>4</sup>	California Bulrush	SD			1	10' x spreading	H	SU, PS, SH	E		-
<i>Sporobolus airoides</i>	Alkali Dropseed	CA			1	3' x 3'	L-M	SU	D		1-24
<i>Zephyranthes candida</i>	Rain Lily	X			1	12" x 12"	H	SU, PS	E		4-9, 12-24, H1, H2

Annuals and Short-Lived Perennials <i>Limnanthes douglasii</i> <i>Limnanthes gracilis</i> ssp. <i>Parishii</i> <i>Lupinus succulentus</i> 4 <i>Oenothera elata</i> 4 <i>Pluchea odorata</i> 4	San Diego Co. Native - SD California Native - CA Non-Native - X	1	6-12" x 6-12"	Mature Size (height x width)	Irrigation Demands: High - H ■ Moderate - M Low - L ■ Rainfall Only - N	Light Requirements Sun - SU ■ Shade - SH Part Shade - PS	Season Evergreen - E, Deciduous - D Semi-Evergreen - SE	Coastal Exposure? Yes - Y	City of Imperial Beach Sunset Zone: 24 1-9, 14-24
	CA	1	6-12" x 6-12"		H	SU			
	SD	2	6-12" x 6-12"		H	SU			
	SD	2	3'x3'		M-H	SU			7-24
	SD	1	2-3' x 2-3'		L-H	SU, PS	E		5-7, 14-24
	SD	1	2-3' x 1-2'		H	SU, PS	SE		-

Vines <i>Vitis californica</i>	San Diego Co. Native - SD California Native - CA Non-Native - X	1	30'	Mature Size (height x width)	Irrigation Demands: High - H ■ Moderate - M Low - L ■ Rainfall Only - N	Light Requirements Sun - SU ■ Shade - SH Part Shade - PS	Season Evergreen - E, Deciduous - D Semi-Evergreen - SE	Coastal Exposure? Yes - Y	City of Imperial Beach Sunset Zone: 24 4-24
	SD	1	30'		N-L	SU, PS	D		

DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS  
IMPERIAL BEACH

TITLE: ZONE A LID RECOMMENDED PLANT LIST

DESIGNED BY:

APPROVED:

DATE:

DRAWN BY:

CHECKED BY:

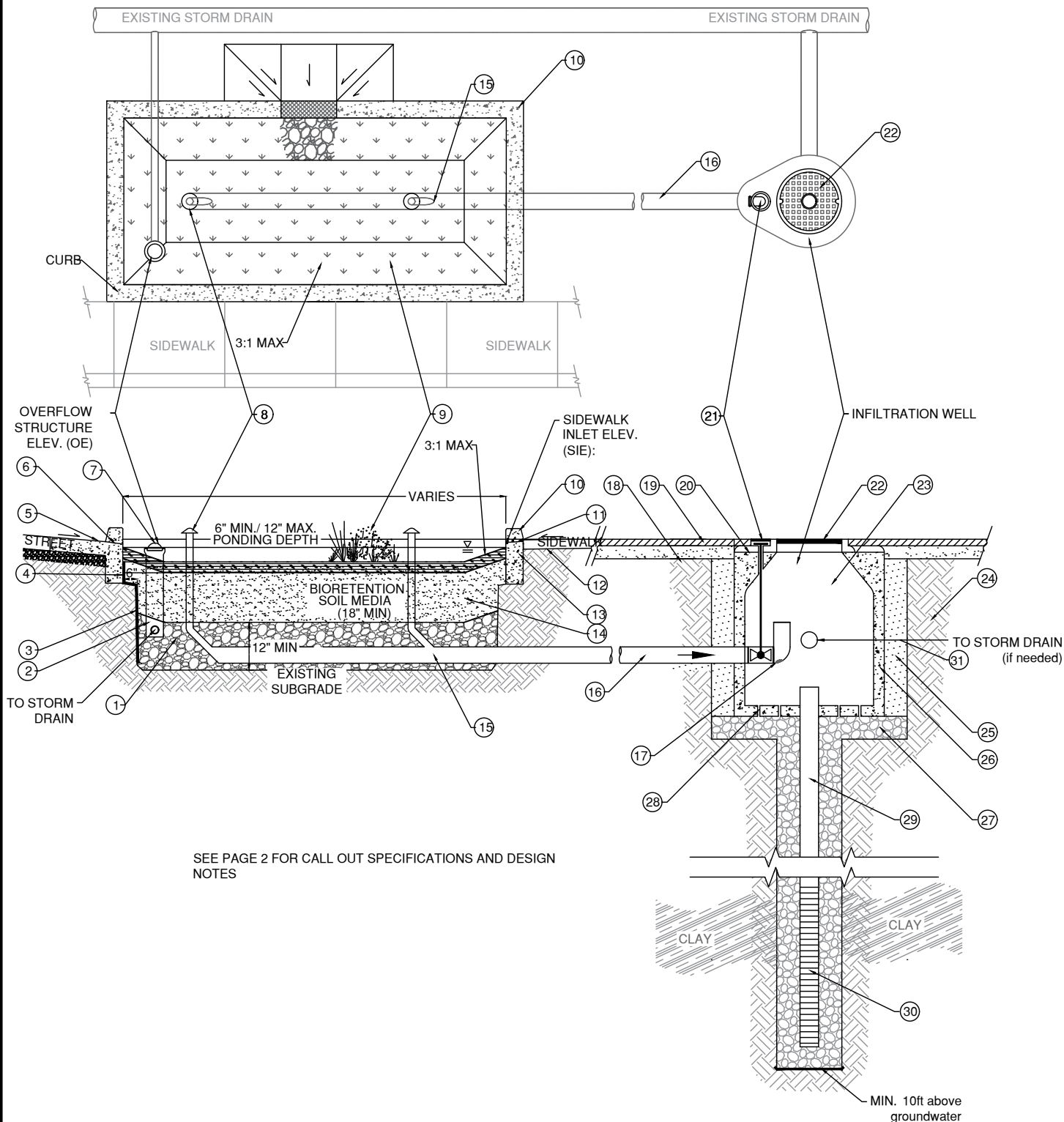
CITY ENGINEER:

STANDARD PLAN

SW-26

SHEET 6 OF 6





# LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS



DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT

APPROVED BY:

VERSION:

08/31/2017

## DRYWELL STORMWATER BMP

USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION

STANDARD PLAN NO.

**SW-27**

SHEET 1 OF 2

## SPECIFICATIONS

1. 12" DEEP OPEN GRADED WASHED STONE (TYPICALLY 3/4" TO 1-1/2" (ASTM #4 STONE) OR 1" TO 2" (ASTM #3 STONE).
2. BRIDGING LAYER(S) PER LIDI BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS (BTS). DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BSM AND AGGREGATE. DO NOT USE FILTER FABRIC BETWEEN BIOFILTER SOIL MATERIAL (BSM) AND AGGREGATE.
3. 30 ML LINER MAY BE REQUIRED TO AVOID LATERAL INFILTRATION BELOW STREET; SUBJECT TO GEOTECHNICAL RECOMMENDATIONS.
4. MAINTAIN 6" MINIMUM BENCH OF NATIVE SOIL FOR SUPPORT OF ADJACENT SIDEWALK/ROAD (TYPICAL).
5. CURB AND GUTTER DETAIL SW-12.
6. CURB INLET DETAIL SW-17, GUTTER INLET ELEV (GIE). LOCATE ENERGY DISSIPATION COBBLE PADS AS SPECIFIED IN INLET DETAILS.
7. OVERFLOW STRUCTURE REQUIRED FOR IN-LINE SYSTEMS WITHOUT OVERFLOW BYPASS, DETAIL SW-22, SW-22A, and SW-23.
8. MAINTENANCE PIPES - 4" MIN. DIA. VERTICAL PVC PIPES CONNECTED TO UNDERDRAIN. PLACED AT START AND 3 FEET BEFORE END OF UNDERDRAIN. REQUIRES DIRECTIONAL SWEEP BEND. THREADED AND CAPPED
9. VEGETATION - PLANT SELECTION AND MULCH (OPTIONAL) PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
10. 4" MIN. EXPOSED WALL HEIGHT
11. SIDEWALK DRAINAGE NOTCH 1" LOWER THAN SIDEWALK, SLOPED TO FACILITY
12. SEE PLANS FOR SIDEWALK RESTORATION
13. DEEP CURB DETAIL SW-13
14. BIORETENTION SOIL MEDIA (BSM). SPECIFICATION PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS (BTS). SPECIFICATION SHOULD AVOID COMPOST OR OTHER MATERIAL KNOWN TO LEACH NUTRIENTS.
15. UNDERDRAIN, MIN. 4" DIA. PVC SDR 35 PERFORATED PIPE OR LARGER AS NEEDED TO CONVEY PEAK TREATED FLOWRATE WITH MINIMAL HEAD LOSS, SEE CONSTRUCTION NOTES.
16. 8" INLET PIPE OR OTHER.
17. LOW FLOW ORIFICE. (SEE DESIGN NOTE 11).
18. STABILIZED BACKFILL - TWO-SACK SLURRY MIX.
19. SIDEWALK PER MUNICIPAL STANDARDS.
20. COMPACTED BASE MATERIAL.
21. ACCESS HATCH WITH SHUT OF VALVE SWITCH. CONNECTED TO SHUT OF VALVE IN INLET PIPE.
22. MAINTENANCE HOLE COS TYPE 204-204 MH A OR B. 3/4" I.D. MIN OBSERVATION PORT.
23. MANHOLE CONE - MODIFIED FLAT BOTTOM.
24. EXISTING SOILS. (SEE CONSTRUCTION NOTE 4, 8).
25. COMPACTED BACKFILL
26. PRE-CAST OR INSITU CAST CONTROL VAULT (SEE DESIGN NOTE 8)
27. ROCK - WASHED, SIZED BETWEEN 3/8" AND 1-1/2"
28. PERFORATED BASE OF CONTROL VAULT
29. DRILLED SHAFT WITH 6" WELDED STEEL OR THREADED PVC CASING (SEE DESIGN NOTE 13 & CONSTRUCTION NOTE 7,8)
30. 6 - 8" O.D. WELDED WIRE STAINLESS STEEL WELL SCREEN OR THREADED PVC SLOTTED SCREEN. SCREEN LENGTH + LENGTH + SLOT WIDTH TO BE DETERMINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH LOCAL CONSTRAINTS .I.E. DISTANCE BETWEEN CLAY LAYER AND MIN. 10FT ABOVE SEASONAL HIGH GROUNDWATER LEVEL
31. PVC STORMDRAIN CONNECTOR PIPE. SAME DIAMETER AS INFLOW PIPE TO CONTROL VAULT.

## DESIGN NOTES

1. ADDITIONAL DESIGN GUIDANCE FOR BIOFILTRATION SYSTEM PROVIDED IN LIDI BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS (BTS) DOCUMENT.
2. BOTTOM WIDTH - PROVIDE 2 FT MINIMUM FLAT BREGENALL
3. BOTTOM WITH A MAX 3:1 SLOPE FOR SURFACE FINISHING WITHIN BIOFILTRATION SYSTEM
4. IF CALTRANS CLASS 2 PERMEABLE IS NOT AVAILABLE, SUBSTITUTE CLASS 3 PERMEABLE WITH AN OVERLYING 3" DEEP LAYER OF 3/4" (NO. 4) OPEN-GRADED AGGREGATE.
5. PROVIDE SPOT ELEVATIONS AT INLETS ON CIVIL PLANS (FE, OE, GIE, SIE). SEE DETAIL SW-17.
6. EDGE CONDITION WILL VARY FOR NEW AND RETROFIT PROJECTS. CURB, WALL, AND SIDEWALK DETAILS MAY BE MODIFIED FOR PROJECT BY CIVIL AND GEOTECHNICAL ENGINEERS.
7. PROVIDE MONITORING WELL IN EACH FACILITY, PER BIORETENTION TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS.
8. LONGITUDINAL SLOPE 6% WITH CHECK DAMS.
9. IF CHECK DAMS ARE NEEDED, SEE CONCRETE CHECK DAM DETAIL SW-18.
10. VARIATIONS IN DRY WELL DESIGN SHOULD BE MADE TO ACCOMMODATE STORAGE VOLUME DESIGN AND TO SUIT LOCAL CONDITIONS AND CONSTRAINTS.
11. IN AREAS WITHOUT A STORMDRAIN, THE SYSTEM SHOULD ONLY BE CONSTRUCTED WHERE THE MAINTENANCE HOLE SURFACE INVERT IS ABOVE THE BIOFILTER OVERFLOW ELEVATION.
12. ALTERNATIVE VAULT LOCATIONS POSSIBLE INCLUDING WITHIN THE BIOFILTER FOOTPRINT.
13. VALVE CAN BE MOVED TO THE BIOFILTER IF DESIRED. REQUIRES STRUCTURAL SUPPORT.
14. ALTERNATIVE PRODUCTS SUCH AS VENDOR-SUPPLIED DRY WELL PRODUCTS MAY BE USED AS A SUBSTITUTE PROVIDED THAT THE ALTERNATIVE PRODUCT IS EQUAL.
15. THIS DESIGN IS LIKELY TO QUALIFY AS A CLASS V WELL SUBJECT TO REGISTRATION WITH THE USEPA.

## LOW IMPACT DEVELOPMENT STORMWATER MANAGEMENT STANDARD DETAILS

 DEVELOPED UNDER PROP. 84 GRANT		APPROVED BY:	DRYWELL STORMWATER BMP	STANDARD PLAN NO.
		VERSION: 08/31/2017		SW-27
USE WITH STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR PUBLIC WORK CONSTRUCTION			SHEET 2 OF 2	

## Low Impact Development Initiative (LIDI) Bioretention Technical Specifications

The following technical information is for use in conjunction with the complete set of bioretention area standard details developed by the LIDI for use in the Central Coast region and throughout California. Central Coast region-specific requirements are noted where applicable.

### Facility Design/Dimensions

- Bioretention facilities should be sized to retain and/or treat the water quality design flow and/or volume in accordance with the stormwater permit requirements that apply to the local jurisdiction and appropriate local, countywide, and/or statewide (CASQA) guidance documents. Design parameters specified in stormwater permits will determine the surface area and storage volume required within the facility.
- Bottom width – facilities should have flat bottoms and sufficient width for ease of constructability and maintenance.
  - Provide 2' wide minimum for facilities with side slopes and planters (facilities with vertical side walls).
- Allowable standing water duration – generally 48 to 72 hours  
Allowable ponding time is typically associated with mosquito vector control or perceived nuisance flooding and varies by location.
- Ponding depth - Min. 6", max. 12". The depth is measured from the surface of the bioretention soil media and not adjusted for application of mulch.
- Planter depth – (from adjacent pedestrian walking surface to facility finished elevation/planting surface) is based on desired ponding plus freeboard, but also relates to planter width. Planters can be deeper if they are wider, and need to be shallower as they narrow. This is a pedestrian perception and safety issue. Some recommended width to depth guidelines are as follows (allowable depths and appropriate edge treatments may be specified by the local jurisdiction and may be determined by ADA requirements):

PLANTER WIDTH	MAX. PLANTER DEPTH
> 5'	16"
4' – 5'	12"
3' – 4'	10"
2' – 3'	8"

- Slope/grades
  - Side slope - 4:1 preferred
    - Max. 3:1 allowed with min. 12" wide shoulder (2% slope toward facility) adjacent to pedestrian use or curb.
  - Longitudinal slope – Facility should be relatively flat (i.e., maximum of 2% longitudinal slope of bottom) so that water ponds and infiltrates evenly across the facility surface.
    - If installed on a slope, facilities should be terraced and separated by check dams and weir overflows to provide flat-bottomed cells with proper storage and infiltration.
    - Installation not recommended on slopes > 8%.
  - Grades on opposite sides within a facility should be similar to optimize ponding across the entire basin/cell.

### Hard Infrastructure

- Inlet curb cut design selection should be based on application considerations:
  - Sloped sided or planter facility
  - Curb and gutter adjacent to facility or separated by pedestrian sidewalk
- Curb cut width – 12"-18" minimum, with rounded edges, depress gutter 2" at opening (see SW-14, SW-15, SW-16)
- Sidewalk edge type selection should be based on application considerations:
  - New or retrofit
  - Sloped sided or planter box
- Sidewalk wall - planter box requires 4" min. height wall adjacent to sidewalk for pedestrian safety.
- Sidewalk wall drainage notch – when sidewalk drains to planter, provide 4"-6" wide notch openings in wall, opening 1" below sidewalk, slope to facility. Space openings to convey flows.
  - Provide minimum 2" cover between notch and structural dowels in curbs/walls.
- Energy dissipation – provide aggregate or concrete splash pads at inlets per inlet details.
  - For aggregate: 6" depth, 3" – 6" rounded, washed cobble
  - For sloped sided facilities where inlet flow velocity is high, extend cobble into facility, but avoid excessive or decorative use.
- Where impermeable liner is included between facility and adjacent

infrastructure (street, parking lot), use 30 ML HDPE or PVC material, see Impermeable Liner detail.

- Check dams – provide for facilities installed on slope
  - Per check dam details SW-17 and SW-18
  - Check dams should be placed for every 4-6” of elevation change and so that the top of each dam is at least as high as the toe of the next upstream dam.
- Overflow structure – required for on-line systems without an overflow bypass
  - Per overflow structure details SW-19, SW-20
  - Connect to approved discharge point or another downstream bioretention area.
- Provide observation well in facility if required
  - Upright 6 inch rigid PVC (SDR 40 or equivalent) pipe, perforated for the section extending through the depth of the bioretention soil media (and aggregate layer if included), extending 6 inches above the top of soil elevation, with a threaded cap.
  - Locate to avoid damage from maintenance activities.

#### Facility Media (soil, aggregate, mulch)

- Aggregate layer – where an aggregate layer is included in the design (underdrain design or optional use based on project requirements, depth based on sizing calculations), specify “CalTrans Class 2 Permeable.”
  - CalTrans Class 2 Permeable does not require an aggregate filter course between the aggregate storage layer and the bioretention soil media above.
  - When CalTrans Class 2 Permeable is not available, substitute CalTrans Class 3 Permeable.
    - Class 3 Permeable requires an overlying 3” deep layer of ¾” (No. 4) open graded aggregate (between Class 3 and bioretention soil media above).
  - Filter fabric - do NOT use fabric between bioretention soil media and aggregate layer
- Bioretention soil media (BSM) - use local jurisdiction approved/recommended BSM (e.g. Bay Area Stormwater Management Agencies Association (BASMAA) Regional Biotreatment Soil Specification (revised January 29, 2016)<sup>1</sup>.

---

1

[http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/sanfranciscobay/water\\_issues/programs/stormwater/MRP/provisionC.3/Revised\\_%20Biotreatment%](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/sanfranciscobay/water_issues/programs/stormwater/MRP/provisionC.3/Revised_%20Biotreatment%20Soil%20Specification.pdf)

- Using a performance specification for alternative bioretention soil mix is not recommended (but may be allowed by the local jurisdiction).
- A pre-mixed bioretention soil media is preferable to mixing soil on-site.
- BSM depth – 18” minimum depth; 24” recommended, or as required by the local jurisdiction. 24” depth required in the Central Coast Region for facilities with underdrains.
- Where trees are specified, increase BSM depth in tree planting locations, per arborist’s or landscape architects direction, or allow trees access to sufficient volume of native soil.
  - Tree planting in bioretention - see BASMAA Literature Review - Bioretention Design for Tree Health (September 15, 2016)<sup>2</sup>
- Bioretention soil media placement and compaction – place BSM in 6” lifts. Compact each lift with a landscape roller or by lightly wetting. Allow BSM to dry overnight before planting.
- Mulch depth – 2” – 3” (3” recommended and required by State Model Water Efficiency Landscape Ordinance)
  - Do not apply mulch in ponding zone just prior to or during rainy season.
  - When mulch is used, excavation must allow for specified bioretention soil depth to achieve finished elevations as shown on civil plans
- Mulch type - when used in ponding zone, must be aged, stabilized, non-floating mulch, such as a specified composted wood mulch. Gravel mulch may also be used when high flow velocities through the system are expected.

#### Landscape (planting and irrigation)

- Irrigation - Provide irrigation for plant establishment (2-3 years), and supplemental irrigation during periods of prolonged drought.
  - Provide separate zone for connection to water supply
- Planting - see LIDI plant guidance for bioretention areas technical assistance memo (TAM) or use bioretention plant list in other local or countywide guidance document.
  - Landscape Architects who have not previously designed bioretention systems should use plants from the LIDI TAM or other approved plant list. Landscape Architects with experience designing for bioretention may use additional plant species consistent with the above lists and

---

<sup>2</sup>20\_Soil.pdf  
[www.basmaa.org](http://www.basmaa.org)

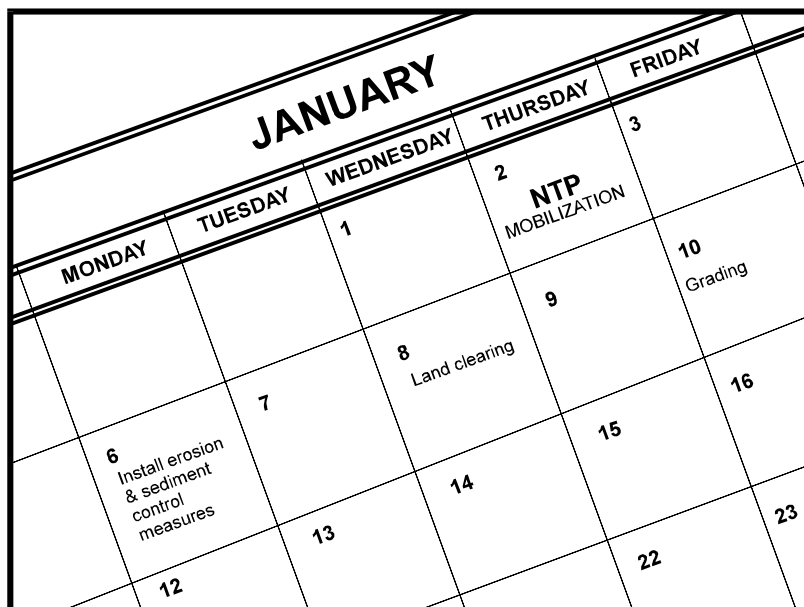
appropriate for the facility design and local conditions.

- Do not locate plants at inlets. Consider mature growth to determine planting layout and avoid future blockage of inlets by plants.
- Trees located on slopes should be 5' minimum from inlets to avoid erosion of soil at root ball.

### Underdrain Design

- Aggregate layer depth – 12" minimum depth.
- Underdrain – use 4" diameter, PVC SDR 35 perforated pipe.
  - Install underdrain with holes facing down.
  - Underdrain discharge elevation should be near top of aggregate layer if facility is allowed to infiltrate into native soil.
  - Underdrain slope may be flat or have a slight slope.
  - Connect underdrain to approved discharge point.
  - Provide capped, threaded PVC cleanout for underdrain, 4" min. dia. with sweep bend.
  - Do NOT wrap underdrain with filter fabric.





## Description and Purpose

Scheduling is the development of a written plan that includes sequencing of construction activities and the implementation of BMPs such as erosion control and sediment control while taking local climate (rainfall, wind, etc.) into consideration. The purpose is to reduce the amount and duration of soil exposed to erosion by wind, rain, runoff, and vehicle tracking, and to perform the construction activities and control practices in accordance with the planned schedule.

## Suitable Applications

Proper sequencing of construction activities to reduce erosion potential should be incorporated into the schedule of every construction project especially during rainy season. Use of other, more costly yet less effective, erosion and sediment control BMPs may often be reduced through proper construction sequencing.

## Limitations

- Environmental constraints such as nesting season prohibitions reduce the full capabilities of this BMP.

## Implementation

- Avoid rainy periods. Schedule major grading operations during dry months when practical. Allow enough time before rainfall begins to stabilize the soil with vegetation or physical means or to install sediment trapping devices.
- Plan the project and develop a schedule showing each phase of construction. Clearly show how the rainy season relates

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ Primary Objective
- ☒ Secondary Objective

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.





to soil disturbing and re-stabilization activities. Incorporate the construction schedule into the SWPPP.

- Include on the schedule, details on the rainy season implementation and deployment of:
  - Erosion control BMPs
  - Sediment control BMPs
  - Tracking control BMPs
  - Wind erosion control BMPs
  - Non-stormwater BMPs
  - Waste management and materials pollution control BMPs
- Include dates for activities that may require non-stormwater discharges such as dewatering, sawcutting, grinding, drilling, boring, crushing, blasting, painting, hydro-demolition, mortar mixing, pavement cleaning, etc.
- Work out the sequencing and timetable for the start and completion of each item such as site clearing and grubbing, grading, excavation, paving, foundation pouring utilities installation, etc., to minimize the active construction area during the rainy season.
  - Sequence trenching activities so that most open portions are closed before new trenching begins.
  - Incorporate staged seeding and re-vegetation of graded slopes as work progresses.
  - Schedule establishment of permanent vegetation during appropriate planting time for specified vegetation.
- Non-active areas should be stabilized as soon as practical after the cessation of soil disturbing activities or one day prior to the onset of precipitation.
- Monitor the weather forecast for rainfall.
- When rainfall is predicted, adjust the construction schedule to allow the implementation of soil stabilization and sediment treatment controls on all disturbed areas prior to the onset of rain.
- Be prepared year-round to deploy erosion control and sediment control BMPs. Erosion may be caused during dry seasons by un-seasonal rainfall, wind, and vehicle tracking. Keep the site stabilized year-round and retain and maintain rainy season sediment trapping devices in operational condition.
- Apply permanent erosion control to areas deemed substantially complete during the project's defined seeding window.
- Avoid soil disturbance during periods with high wind velocities.

## Costs

Construction scheduling to reduce erosion may increase other construction costs due to reduced economies of scale in performing site grading. The cost effectiveness of scheduling techniques

should be compared with the other less effective erosion and sedimentation controls to achieve a cost-effective balance.

## **Inspection and Maintenance**

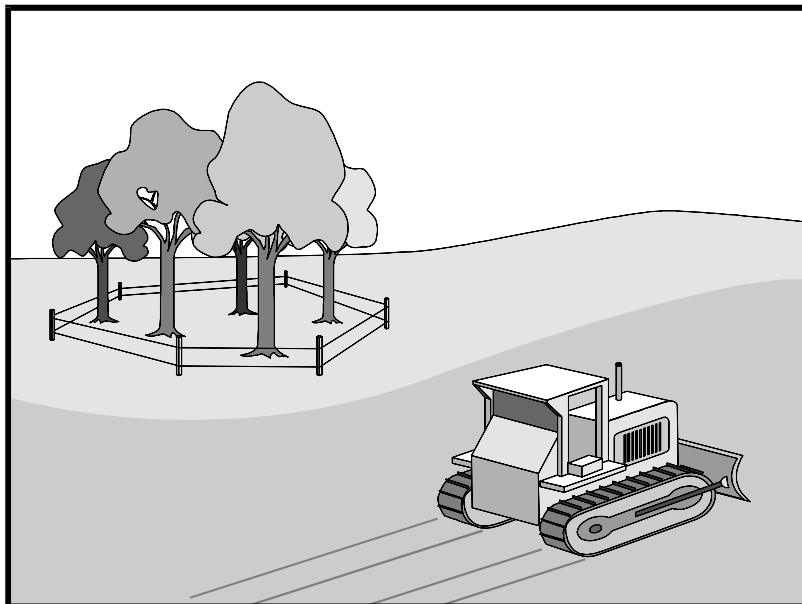
- Verify that work is progressing in accordance with the schedule. If progress deviates, take corrective actions.
- Amend the schedule when changes are warranted.
- Amend the schedule prior to the rainy season to show updated information on the deployment and implementation of construction site BMPs.

## **References**

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices (EPA 832-R-92-005), U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, September 1992.

# Preservation of Existing Vegetation EC-2



## Description and Purpose

Carefully planned preservation of existing vegetation minimizes the potential of removing or injuring existing trees, vines, shrubs, and grasses that protect soil from erosion.

## Suitable Applications

Preservation of existing vegetation is suitable for use on most projects. Large project sites often provide the greatest opportunity for use of this BMP. Suitable applications include the following:

- Areas within the site where no construction activity occurs or occurs at a later date. This BMP is especially suitable to multi year projects where grading can be phased.
- Areas where natural vegetation exists and is designated for preservation. Such areas often include steep slopes, watercourse, and building sites in wooded areas.
- Areas where local, state, and federal government require preservation, such as vernal pools, wetlands, marshes, certain oak trees, etc. These areas are usually designated on the plans, or in the specifications, permits, or environmental documents.
- Where vegetation designated for ultimate removal can be temporarily preserved and be utilized for erosion control and sediment control.
- Protecting existing vegetation buffers and swales.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Objective**
- ☐ **Secondary Objective**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



# Preservation of Existing Vegetation EC-2

---

## Limitations

- Requires forward planning by the owner/developer, contractor, and design staff.
- Limited opportunities for use when project plans do not incorporate existing vegetation into the site design.
- For sites with diverse topography, it is often difficult and expensive to save existing trees while grading the site satisfactory for the planned development.

## Implementation

The best way to prevent erosion is to not disturb the land. In order to reduce the impacts of new development and redevelopment, projects may be designed to avoid disturbing land in sensitive areas of the site (e.g., natural watercourses, steep slopes), and to incorporate unique or desirable existing vegetation into the site's landscaping plan. Clearly marking and leaving a buffer area around these unique areas during construction will help to preserve these areas as well as take advantage of natural erosion prevention and sediment trapping.

Existing vegetation to be preserved on the site must be protected from mechanical and other injury while the land is being developed. The purpose of protecting existing vegetation is to ensure the survival of desirable vegetation for shade, beautification, and erosion control. Mature vegetation has extensive root systems that help to hold soil in place, thus reducing erosion. In addition, vegetation helps keep soil from drying rapidly and becoming susceptible to erosion. To effectively save existing vegetation, no disturbances of any kind should be allowed within a defined area around the vegetation. For trees, no construction activity should occur within the drip line of the tree.

## Timing

- Provide for preservation of existing vegetation prior to the commencement of clearing and grubbing operations or other soil disturbing activities in areas where no construction activity is planned or will occur at a later date.

## Design and Layout

- Mark areas to be preserved with temporary fencing. Include sufficient setback to protect roots.
  - Orange colored plastic mesh fencing works well.
  - Use appropriate fence posts and adequate post spacing and depth to completely support the fence in an upright position.
- Locate temporary roadways, stockpiles, and layout areas to avoid stands of trees, shrubs, and grass.
- Consider the impact of grade changes to existing vegetation and the root zone.
- Maintain existing irrigation systems where feasible. Temporary irrigation may be required.
- Instruct employees and subcontractors to honor protective devices. Prohibit heavy equipment, vehicular traffic, or storage of construction materials within the protected area.

# Preservation of Existing Vegetation EC-2

---

- Consider pruning or mowing vegetation instead of removing it to allow for regrowth.
- If possible, retain vegetation buffer around the site and adjacent waterways.

## Costs

There is little cost associated with preserving existing vegetation if properly planned during the project design, and these costs may be offset by aesthetic benefits that enhance property values. During construction, the cost for preserving existing vegetation will likely be less than the cost of applying erosion and sediment controls to the disturbed area. Replacing vegetation inadvertently destroyed during construction can be extremely expensive, sometimes in excess of \$10,000 per tree.

## Inspection and Maintenance

During construction, the limits of disturbance should remain clearly marked at all times. Irrigation or maintenance of existing vegetation should be described in the landscaping plan. If damage to protected trees still occurs, maintenance guidelines described below should be followed:

- Verify that protective measures remain in place. Restore damaged protection measures immediately.
- Serious tree injuries shall be attended to by an arborist.
- Damage to the crown, trunk, or root system of a retained tree shall be repaired immediately.
- Trench as far from tree trunks as possible, usually outside of the tree drip line or canopy. Curve trenches around trees to avoid large roots or root concentrations. If roots are encountered, consider tunneling under them. When trenching or tunneling near or under trees to be retained, place tunnels at least 18 in. below the ground surface, and not below the tree center to minimize impact on the roots.
- Do not leave tree roots exposed to air. Cover exposed roots with soil as soon as possible. If soil covering is not practical, protect exposed roots with wet burlap or peat moss until the tunnel or trench is ready for backfill.
- Cleanly remove the ends of damaged roots with a smooth cut.
- Fill trenches and tunnels as soon as possible. Careful filling and tamping will eliminate air spaces in the soil, which can damage roots.
- If bark damage occurs, cut back all loosened bark into the undamaged area, with the cut tapered at the top and bottom and drainage provided at the base of the wood. Limit cutting the undamaged area as much as possible.
- Aerate soil that has been compacted over a tree's root zone by punching holes 12 in. deep with an iron bar and moving the bar back and forth until the soil is loosened. Place holes 18 in. apart throughout the area of compacted soil under the tree crown.
- Fertilization:

# Preservation of Existing Vegetation EC-2

---

- Fertilize trees in the late fall or early spring. Although to note, many native species do not require fertilization.
- Apply fertilizer to the soil over the feeder roots and in accordance with label instructions, but never closer than 3 ft to the trunk. Increase the fertilized area by one-fourth of the crown area for conifers that have extended root systems.
- Retain protective measures until all other construction activity is complete to avoid damage during site cleanup and stabilization.

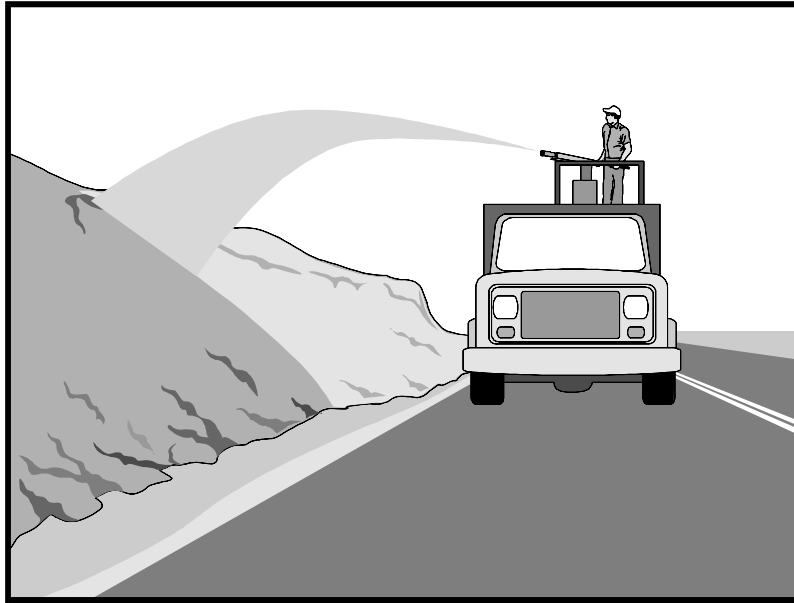
## References

County of Sacramento Tree Preservation Ordinance, September 1981.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for The Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



## Description and Purpose

Hydraulic Mulch consists of various types of fibrous materials mixed with water and sprayed onto the soil surface in slurry form to provide a layer of temporary protection from wind and water erosion.

## Suitable Applications

Hydraulic mulch as a temporary, stand alone, erosion control BMP is suitable for disturbed areas that require temporary protection from wind and water erosion until permanent soil stabilization activities commence. Examples include:

- Rough-graded areas that will remain inactive for longer than permit-required thresholds (e.g., 14 days) or otherwise require stabilization to minimize erosion or prevent sediment discharges.
- Soil stockpiles.
- Slopes with exposed soil between existing vegetation such as trees or shrubs.
- Slopes planted with live, container-grown vegetation or plugs.
- Slopes burned by wildfire.
- To stabilize earthen berms
- Areas seeded by broadcasting or drilling

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-4 Hydroseeding
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-6 Straw Mulch
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats
- EC-8 Wood Mulching
- EC-14 Compost Blanket
- EC-16 Non-Vegetative Stabilization

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- Temporary stabilization during high wind conditions

Hydraulic mulch can also be applied to augment other erosion control BMPs such as:

- In conjunction with straw mulch (see EC-6 Straw Mulch) where the rate of hydraulic mulch is reduced to 100-500 lbs per acre and the slurry is applied over the straw as a tackifying agent to hold the straw in place.
- Supplemental application of soil amendments, such as fertilizer, lime, gypsum, soil bio-stimulants or compost.

## Limitations

In general, hydraulic mulch is not limited by slope length, gradient or soil type. However, the following limitations typically apply:

- Most hydraulic mulch applications, particularly bonded fiber matrices (BFMs), require at least 24 hours to dry before rainfall occurs.
- Temporary applications (i.e., without a vegetative component) may require a second application in order to remain effective for an entire rainy season.
- Treatment areas must be accessible to hydraulic mulching equipment.
- Availability of water sources in remote areas for mixing and application.
- As a stand-alone temporary BMP, hydraulic mulches may need to be re-applied to maintain their erosion control effectiveness, typically after 6-12 months depending on the type of mulch used.
- Availability of hydraulic mulching equipment may be limited just prior to the rainy season and prior to storms due to high demand.
- Cellulose fiber mulches alone may not perform well on steep slopes or in coarse soils.
- This BMP consists of a mixture of several constituents (e.g., fibers/mulches, compost, tackifiers, and other chemical constituents), some of which may be proprietary and may come pre-mixed by the manufacturer. The water quality impacts of these constituents are relatively unknown, and some may have water quality impacts due to their chemical makeup. Refer to specific chemical properties identified in the product Safety Data Sheet (may not include ecological information); products should be evaluated for project-specific implementation by the SWPPP Preparer. Refer to factsheet EC-05 for further guidance on selecting soil binders.
- A water supply is needed to refill hydro mulch equipment tank.
- Cannot be disturbed by walking or driving on the surface after application.
- Recommend using in conjunction with other BMPs (i.e., fiber rolls, etc.).



## Implementation

- Where feasible, it is preferable to prepare soil surfaces prior to application by roughening embankments and fill areas with a crimping or punching type roller or by track walking.
- The majority of hydraulic mulch applications do not necessarily require surface/soil preparation (See EC-15 Soil Preparation) although in almost every case where re-vegetation is included as part of the practice, soil preparation can be beneficial. One of the advantages of hydraulic mulch over other erosion control methods is that it can be applied in areas where soil preparation is precluded by site conditions, such as steep slopes, rocky soils, or inaccessibility.
- Avoid mulch over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.
- Hydraulic mulching is generally performed utilizing specialized machines that have a large water-holding/mixing tank and some form of mechanical agitation or other recirculation method to keep water, mulch and soil amendments in suspension. The mixed hydraulic slurry can be applied from a tower sprayer on top of the machine or by extending a hose to areas remote from the machine.
- Where possible apply hydraulic mulch from multiple directions to adequately cover the soil. Application from a single direction can result in shadowing, uneven coverage and failure of the BMP.
- Hydraulic mulch can also include a vegetative component, such as seed, rhizomes, or stolons (see EC-4 Hydraulic Seed).
- Typical hydraulic mulch application rates range from 2,000 pounds per acre for standard mulches (SMs) to 3,500 lbs. per acre for BFMs. However, the required amount of hydraulic mulch to provide adequate coverage of exposed topsoil may appear to exceed the standard rates when the roughness of the soil surface is changed due to soil preparation methods (see EC-15 Soil Preparation) or by slope gradient.
- Other factors such as existing soil moisture and soil texture can have a profound effect on the amount of hydraulic mulch required (i.e. application rate) applied to achieve an erosion-resistant covering.
- Avoid use of mulch without a tackifier component, especially on slopes.
- Mulches used in the hydraulic mulch slurry can include:
  - Cellulose fiber (paper- or corn-based)
  - Wood fibers
  - Cotton
  - Synthetics
  - Compost (see EC-14, Compost Blanket)
  - Straw

- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

## Categories of Hydraulic Mulches

### Standard Hydraulic Mulch (SM)

Standard hydraulic mulches are generally applied at a rate of 2,000 lbs. per acre and are manufactured containing around 5% tackifier (i.e. soil binder), usually a plant-derived guar or psyllium type. Most standard mulches are green in color derived from food-color based dyes.

### Hydraulic Matrices (HM) and Stabilized Fiber Matrices (SFM)

Hydraulic matrices and stabilized fiber matrices are slurries which contain increased levels of tackifiers/soil binders; usually 10% or more by weight. HMs and SFMs have improved performance compared to a standard hydraulic mulch (SM) because of the additional percentage of tackifier and because of their higher application rates, typically 2,500 – 4,000 lbs. per acre. Hydraulic matrices can include a mixture of fibers, for example, a 50/50 blend of paper and wood fiber. In the case of an SFM, the tackifier/soil binder is specified as a polyacrylamide (PAM).

### Bonded Fiber Matrix (BFM)

Bonded fiber matrices (BFMs) are hydraulically-applied systems of fibers, adhesives (typically guar- or polymer-based) and chemical cross-links. Upon drying, the slurry forms an erosion-resistant blanket that prevents soil erosion and promotes vegetation establishment. The cross-linked adhesive in the BFM should be biodegradable and should not dissolve or disperse upon re-wetting. BFMs are typically applied at rates from 3,000 to 4,000 lbs. per acre based on the manufacturer's recommendation. BFMs should not be applied immediately before, during or immediately after rainfall or if the soil is saturated. Depending on the product, BFMs typically require 12 to 24 hours to dry and become effective.

### Hydraulic Compost Matrix (HCM)

Hydraulic compost matrix (HCM) is a field-derived practice whereby finely graded or sifted compost is introduced into the hydraulic mulch slurry. A guar-type tackifier can be added for steeper slope applications as well as any specified seed mixtures. An HCM can help to accelerate seed germination and growth. HCMs are particularly useful as an in-fill for three-dimensional re-vegetation geocomposites, such as turf reinforcement mats (TRM) (see EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats).

## Costs

Average installed costs for hydraulic mulch categories are provided in Table 1, below.

**Table**  
**HYDRAULIC MULCH BMPs**  
**INSTALLED COSTS**

BMP	Installed Cost/Acre
Standard Hydraulic Mulching (SM)	\$2,100 - \$4,700 per acre
Hydraulic Matrices (HM) and Stabilized Fiber Matrices	
Guar-based	\$2,600 - \$5,200 per acre
PAM-based	\$3,200 - \$7,200 per acre
Bonded Fiber Matrix (BFM)	\$5,000 - \$8,800 per acre
Hydraulic Compost Matrix (HCM)	\$3,800 - \$4,500 per acre

Source: Cost information received from individual product manufacturers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004). Adjusted for inflation (2016 dollars) by Tetra Tech, Inc.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Maintain an unbroken, temporary mulched ground cover throughout the period of construction when the soils are not being reworked.
- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident should be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- Compare the number of bags or weight of applied mulch to the area treated to determine actual application rates and compliance with specifications.

## References

Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls: Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007.

Controlling Erosion of Construction Sites, Agricultural Information #347, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) (formerly Soil Conservation Service – SCS).

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Control in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control, an Inventory of Current Practices Draft, US EPA, April 1990.

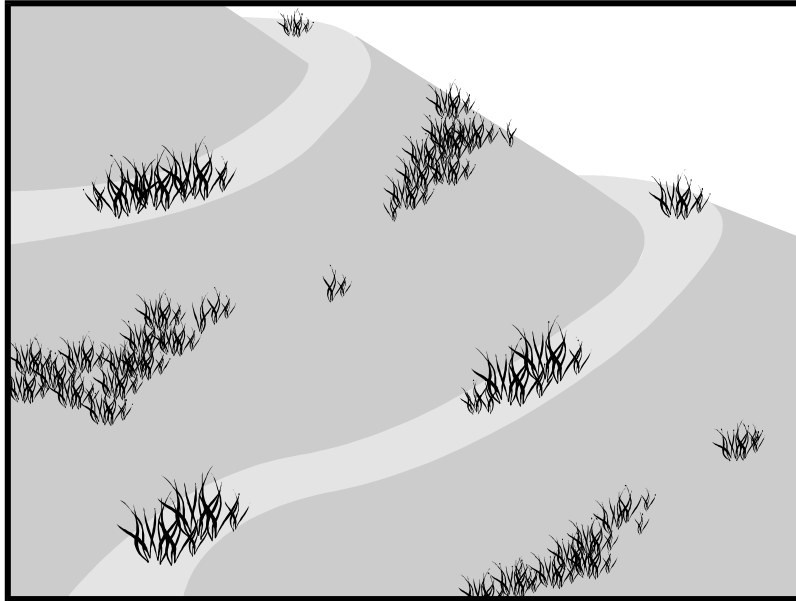
Soil Erosion by Water, Agriculture Information Bulletin #513, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



## Description and Purpose

Hydroseeding typically consists of applying a mixture of a hydraulic mulch, seed, and water with the possible addition of tackifier, compost, mycorrhizae inoculant, fertilizer, and/or soil conditioner, to temporarily protect exposed soils from erosion by water and wind. Hydraulic seeding, or hydroseeding, is simply the method by which temporary or permanent seed is applied to the soil surface and temporary erosion control is established by means of the mulch component.

## Suitable Applications

Hydroseeding is suitable for disturbed areas requiring temporary protection until permanent stabilization is established, for disturbed areas that will be re-disturbed following an extended period of inactivity, or to apply permanent stabilization measures. Hydroseeding without mulch or other cover (e.g., EC-7, Geotextiles and Mats) is not a stand-alone erosion control BMP and should be combined with additional measures until vegetation establishment.

Typical applications for hydroseeding include:

- Disturbed soil/graded areas where permanent stabilization or continued earthwork is not anticipated prior to seed germination.
- Cleared and graded areas exposed to seasonal rains or temporary irrigation.
- To vegetate swales and earthen berms.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-6 Straw Mulch
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats
- EC-8 Wood Mulching
- EC-14 Compost Blanket
- EC-16 Non-Vegetative Stabilization

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- Areas not subject to heavy wear by construction equipment or high traffic.

## Limitations

- Availability of hydroseeding equipment may be limited just prior to the rainy season and prior to storms due to high demand.
- Hydraulic seed should be applied with hydraulic mulch or a stand-alone hydroseed application should be followed by one of the following:
  - Straw mulch (see Straw Mulch EC-6)
  - Rolled erosion control products (see Geotextiles and Mats EC-7)
  - Application of Compost Blanket (see Compost Blanket EC-14)

Hydraulic seed may be used alone only on small flat surfaces when there is sufficient time in the season to ensure adequate vegetation establishment and coverage to provide adequate erosion control.

- Hydraulic seed without mulch does not provide immediate erosion control.
- Temporary seeding may not be appropriate for steep slopes (i.e., slopes readily prone to rill erosion or without sufficient topsoil).
- Temporary seeding may not be appropriate in dry periods without supplemental irrigation.
- Temporary vegetation may have to be removed before permanent vegetation is applied.
- Temporary vegetation may not be appropriate for short term inactivity (i.e., less than 3-6 months).
- Vegetation may not establish when hydroseed is applied to very compact soils.
- Mulch may inhibit germination when applied at high rates.
- This BMP consists of a mixture of several constituents (e.g., fibers/mulches, tackifiers, and other chemical constituents), some of which may be proprietary and may come pre-mixed by the manufacturer. The water quality impacts of these constituents are relatively unknown, and some may have water quality impacts due to their chemical makeup. Additionally, these constituents may require non-visible pollutant monitoring. Refer to specific chemical properties identified in the product's Safety Data Sheet (SDS), although, note that not all SDS's provide ecological information; products should be evaluated for project-specific implementation by the QSD. Refer to fact sheet EC-05, Soil Binders, for further guidance on selecting soil binders.

## Implementation

In order to select appropriate hydraulic seed mixtures, an evaluation of site conditions should be performed with respect to:

- Soil conditions
- Site topography and exposure (sun/wind)
- Season and climate
- Vegetation types
- Maintenance requirements
- Sensitive adjacent areas
- Water availability
- Plans for permanent vegetation

The local office of the U.S.D.A. Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), Resource Conservation Districts and Agricultural Extension Service can provide information on appropriate seed mixes.

The following steps should be followed for implementation:

- Where appropriate or feasible, soil should be prepared to receive the seed by disking or otherwise scarifying (See EC-15, Soil Preparation) the surface to eliminate crust, improve air and water infiltration and create a more favorable environment for germination and growth.
- Avoid use of hydraulic seed in areas where the BMP would be incompatible with future earthwork activities.
- Hydraulic seed can be applied using a multiple step or one step process.
  - In a multiple step process, hydraulic seed is applied first, followed by mulch or a Rolled Erosion Control Product (RECP).
  - In the one step process, hydraulic seed is applied with hydraulic mulch in a hydraulic matrix. When the one step process is used to apply the mixture of fiber, seed, etc., the seed rate should be increased to compensate for all seeds not having direct contact with the soil.
- All hydraulically seeded areas should have mulch, or alternate erosion control cover to keep seeds in place and to moderate soil moisture and temperature until the seeds germinate and grow.
- All seeds should be in conformance with the California State Seed Law of the Department of Agriculture. Each seed bag should be delivered to the site sealed and clearly marked as to species, purity, percent germination, dealer's guarantee, and dates of test. The container should be labeled to clearly reflect the amount of Pure Live Seed (PLS) contained. All legume seed should be pellet inoculated. Inoculant sources should be species specific and should be applied at a rate of 2 lb of inoculant per 100 lb seed.
- Commercial fertilizer should conform to the requirements of the California Food and Agricultural Code, which can be found at: [http://www.leginfo.ca.gov/.html/fac\\_table\\_of\\_contents.html](http://www.leginfo.ca.gov/.html/fac_table_of_contents.html). Fertilizer should be pelleted or granular form.
- Follow up applications should be made as needed to cover areas of poor coverage or germination/vegetation establishment and to maintain adequate soil protection.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.

- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

## Costs

Average cost for installation and maintenance may vary from as low as \$2,400 per acre for flat slopes and stable soils, to \$5,200 per acre for moderate to steep slopes and/or erosive soils. Cost of seed mixtures vary based on types of required vegetation.

BMP	Installed Cost per Acre
Hydraulic Seed	\$2,400-\$5,200

Source: Cost information received from individual product manufacturers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004). Adjusted for inflation (2016 dollars) by Tetra Tech, Inc.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident should be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- Where seeds fail to germinate, or they germinate and die, the area must be re-seeded, fertilized, and mulched within the planting season, using not less than half the original application rates.
- Irrigation systems, if applicable, should be inspected daily while in use to identify system malfunctions and line breaks. When line breaks are detected, the system must be shut down immediately and breaks repaired before the system is put back into operation.
- Irrigation systems should be inspected for complete coverage and adjusted as needed to maintain complete coverage.

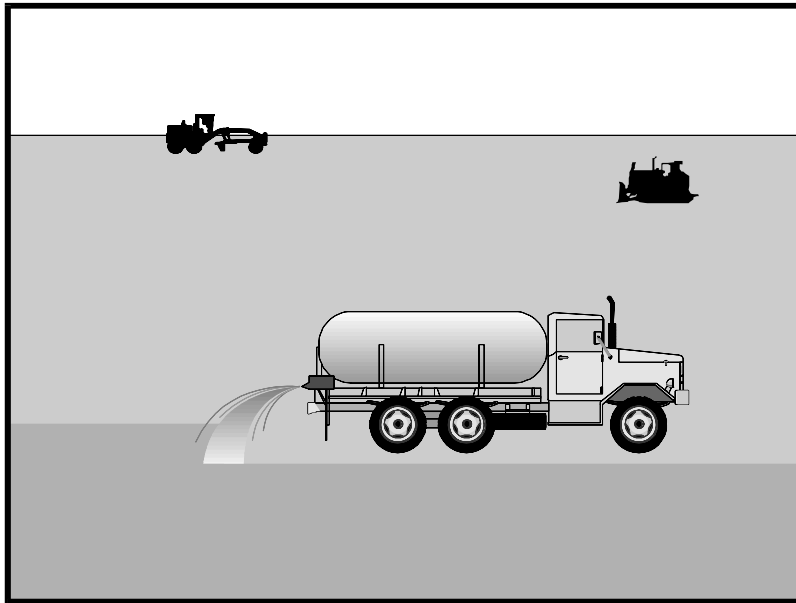
## References

Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls: Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999.





## Description and Purpose

Soil binding consists of application and maintenance of a soil stabilizer to exposed soil surfaces. Soil binders are materials applied to the soil surface to temporarily prevent water and wind induced erosion of exposed soils on construction sites.

## Suitable Applications

Soil binders are typically applied to disturbed areas requiring temporary protection. Because soil binders, when used as a stand-alone practice, can often be incorporated into the soil, they are a good alternative to mulches in areas where grading activities will soon resume. Soil binders are commonly used in the following areas:

- Rough graded soils that will be inactive for a short period of time.
- Soil stockpiles.
- Temporary haul roads prior to placement of crushed rock.
- Compacted soil road base.
- Construction staging, materials storage, and layout areas.
- Slopes and areas requiring stabilization prior to rain.
- Disturbed areas subject to high winds.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-4 Hydroseeding
- EC-6 Straw Mulch
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats
- EC-8 Wood Mulching

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



## Limitations

- Soil binders are temporary in nature and may need reapplication.
- Soil binders require a minimum curing time until fully effective, as prescribed by the manufacturer. Curing time may be 24 hours or longer. Soil binders may need reapplication after a storm event.
- Soil binders will generally experience spot failures during heavy rainfall events. If runoff penetrates the soil at the top of a slope treated with a soil binder, it is likely that the runoff will undercut the stabilized soil layer and discharge at a point further down slope.
- Plant-material-based soil binders do not generally hold up to pedestrian or vehicular traffic across treated areas as well as polymeric emulsion blends or cementitious-based binders.
- Soil binders may not sufficiently penetrate compacted soils.
- Some soil binders are soil texture specific in terms of their effectiveness. For example, polyacrylamides (PAMs) work very well on silt and clayey soils but their performance decreases dramatically in sandy soils.
- Some soil binders may not perform well with low relative humidity. Under rainy conditions, some agents may become slippery or leach out of the soil.
- Soil binders may not cure if low temperatures occur within 24 hours of application.
- The water quality impacts of some chemical soil binders are relatively unknown, and some may have water quality impacts due to their chemical makeup. Additionally, these chemicals may require non-visible pollutant monitoring. Products should be evaluated for project-specific implementation by the SWPPP Preparer. Refer to the product Material Safety Data Sheet for chemical properties.

## Implementation

### *General Considerations*

- Soil binders should conform to local municipality specifications and requirements.
- Site soil types will dictate appropriate soil binders to be used.
- A soil binder must be environmentally benign (non-toxic to plant and animal life), easy to apply, easy to maintain, economical, and should not stain paved or painted surfaces. Soil binders should not pollute stormwater when cured. Obtain a Safety Data Sheet (SDS) from the manufacturer to ensure non-toxicity (note however, the SDS may not include ecological information).
- Stormwater runoff from PAM treated soils should pass through one of the following sediment control BMP prior to discharging to surface waters.
  - When the total drainage area is greater than or equal to 5 acres, PAM treated areas should drain to a sediment basin.

- Areas less than 5 acres should drain to sediment control BMPs, such as a sediment trap, or a series of check dams. The total number of check dams used should be maximized to achieve the greatest amount of settlement of sediment prior to discharging from the site. Each check dam should be spaced evenly in the drainage channel through which stormwater flows are discharged off site.
- Performance of soil binders depends on temperature, humidity, and traffic across treated areas.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.
- Some soil binders are designed for application to roads.
- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

## ***Selecting a Soil Binder***

Properties of common soil binders used for erosion control are provided on Table 1 at the end of this Fact Sheet. Use Table 1 to select an appropriate soil binder. Refer to WE-1, Wind Erosion Control, for dust control soil binders.

Factors to consider when selecting a soil binder include the following:

- Suitability to situation - Consider where the soil binder will be applied, if it needs a high resistance to leaching or abrasion, and whether it needs to be compatible with any existing vegetation. Determine the length of time soil stabilization will be needed, and if the soil binder will be placed in an area where it will degrade rapidly. In general, slope steepness is not a discriminating factor for the listed soil binders.
- Soil types and surface materials - Fines and moisture content are key properties of surface materials. Consider a soil binder's ability to penetrate, likelihood of leaching, and ability to form a surface crust on the surface materials.
- Frequency of application - The frequency of application is related to the functional longevity of the binder, which can be affected by subgrade conditions, surface type, climate, and maintenance schedule.
- Frequent applications could lead to high costs. Application frequency may be minimized if the soil binder has good penetration, low evaporation, and good longevity. Consider also that frequent application will require frequent equipment clean up.

## ***Plant-Material-Based (Short Lived, <6 months) Binders***

Guar: Guar is a non-toxic, biodegradable, natural galactomannan-based hydrocolloid treated with dispersant agents for easy field mixing. It should be mixed with water at the rate of 11 to 15 lb per 1,000 gallons. Recommended minimum application rates are as follows:

**Application Rates for Guar Soil Stabilizer**

Slope (H:V):	Flat	4:1	3:1	2:1	1:1
lb/acre:	40	45	50	60	70

**Psyllium:** Psyllium is composed of the finely ground muciloid coating of plantago seeds that is applied as a dry powder or in a wet slurry to the surface of the soil. It dries to form a firm but rewettable membrane that binds soil particles together but permits germination and growth of seed. Psyllium requires 12 to 18 hours drying time. Application rates should be from 80 to 200 lb/acre, with enough water in solution to allow for a uniform slurry flow.

**Starch:** Starch is non-ionic, cold water soluble (pre-gelatinized) granular cornstarch. The material is mixed with water and applied at the rate of 150 lb/acre. Approximate drying time is 9 to 12 hours.

### ***Plant-Material-Based (Long Lived, 6-12 months) Binders***

**Pitch and Rosin Emulsion:** Generally, a non-ionic pitch and rosin emulsion has a minimum solids content of 48%. The rosin should be a minimum of 26% of the total solids content. The soil stabilizer should be non-corrosive, water dilutable emulsion that upon application cures to a water insoluble binding and cementing agent. For soil erosion control applications, the emulsion is diluted and should be applied as follows:

- For clayey soil: 5 parts water to 1-part emulsion
- For sandy soil: 10 parts water to 1-part emulsion

Application can be by water truck or hydraulic seeder with the emulsion and product mixture applied at the rate specified by the manufacturer.

### ***Polymeric Emulsion Blend Binders***

**Acrylic Copolymers and Polymers:** Polymeric soil stabilizers should consist of a liquid or solid polymer or copolymer with an acrylic base that contains a minimum of 55% solids. The polymeric compound should be handled and mixed in a manner that will not cause foaming or should contain an anti-foaming agent. The polymeric emulsion should not exceed its shelf life or expiration date; manufacturers should provide the expiration date. Polymeric soil stabilizer should be readily miscible in water, non-injurious to seed or animal life, non-flammable, should provide surface soil stabilization for various soil types without totally inhibiting water infiltration, and should not re-emulsify when cured. The applied compound typically requires 12 to 24 hours drying time. Liquid copolymer should be diluted at a rate of 10 parts water to 1-part polymer and the mixture applied to soil at a rate of 1,175 gallons/acre.

**Liquid Polymers of Methacrylates and Acrylates:** This material consists of a tackifier/sealer that is a liquid polymer of methacrylates and acrylates. It is an aqueous 100% acrylic emulsion blend of 40% solids by volume that is free from styrene, acetate, vinyl, ethoxylated surfactants or silicates. For soil stabilization applications, it is diluted with water in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and applied with a hydraulic seeder at the rate of 20 gallons/acre. Drying time is 12 to 18 hours after application.

Copolymers of Sodium Acrylates and Acrylamides: These materials are non-toxic, dry powders that are copolymers of sodium acrylate and acrylamide. They are mixed with water and applied to the soil surface for erosion control at rates that are determined by slope gradient:

<b>Slope Gradient (H:V)</b>	<b>lb/acre</b>
Flat to 5:1	3.0 – 5.0
5:1 to 3:1	5.0 – 10.0
2:1 to 1:1	10.0 – 20.0

Poly-Acrylamide (PAM) and Copolymer of Acrylamide: Linear copolymer polyacrylamide for use as a soil binder is packaged as a dry flowable solid, as a liquid. Refer to the manufacturer's recommendation for dilution and application rates as they vary based on liquid or dry form, site conditions and climate.

- Limitations specific to PAM are as follows:
  - Do not use PAM on a slope that flows into a water body without passing through a sediment trap or sediment basin.
  - The specific PAM copolymer formulation must be anionic. Cationic PAM should not be used in any application because of known aquatic toxicity problems. Only the highest drinking water grade PAM, certified for compliance with ANSI/NSF Standard 60 for drinking water treatment, should be used for soil applications.
  - PAM designated for erosion and sediment control should be “water soluble” or “linear” or “non-cross linked”.
  - PAM should not be used as a stand-alone BMP to protect against water-based erosion. When combined with mulch, its effectiveness increases dramatically.

Hydro-Colloid Polymers: Hydro-Colloid Polymers are various combinations of dry flowable poly-acrylamides, copolymers and hydro-colloid polymers that are mixed with water and applied to the soil surface at rates of 55 to 60 lb/acre. Drying times are 0 to 4 hours.

### ***Cementitious-Based Binders***

Gypsum: This is a formulated gypsum-based product that readily mixes with water and mulch to form a thin protective crust on the soil surface. It is composed of high purity gypsum that is ground, calcined and processed into calcium sulfate hemihydrate with a minimum purity of 86%. It is mixed in a hydraulic seeder and applied at rates 4,000 to 12,000 lb/acre. Drying time is 4 to 8 hours.

### ***Applying Soil Binders***

After selecting an appropriate soil binder, the untreated soil surface must be prepared before applying the soil binder. The untreated soil surface must contain sufficient moisture to assist the agent in achieving uniform distribution. In general, the following steps should be followed:

- Follow manufacturer's written recommendations for application rates, pre-wetting of application area, and cleaning of equipment after use.
- Prior to application, roughen embankment and fill areas.
- Consider the drying time for the selected soil binder and apply with sufficient time before anticipated rainfall. Soil binders should not be applied during or immediately before rainfall.
- Avoid over spray onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, sound walls, existing vegetation, etc.

- Soil binders should not be applied to frozen soil, areas with standing water, under freezing or rainy conditions, or when the temperature is below 40°F during the curing period.
- More than one treatment is often necessary, although the second treatment may be diluted or have a lower application rate.
- Generally, soil binders require a minimum curing time of 24 hours before they are fully effective. Refer to manufacturer's instructions for specific cure time.
- For liquid agents:
  - Crown or slope ground to avoid ponding.
  - Uniformly pre-wet ground at 0.03 to 0.3 gal/yd<sup>2</sup> or according to manufacturer's recommendations.
  - Apply solution under pressure. Overlap solution 6 to 12 in.
  - Allow treated area to cure for the time recommended by the manufacturer; typically, at least 24 hours.
  - Apply second treatment before first treatment becomes ineffective, using 50% application rate.
  - In low humidities, reactivate chemicals by re-wetting with water at 0.1 to 0.2 gal/yd<sup>2</sup>.

## Costs

Costs vary according to the soil stabilizer selected for implementation. The following are approximate installed costs:

Soil Binder	Cost per Acre
Plant-Material-Based (Short Lived) Binders	\$900-\$1,200
Plant-Material-Based (Long Lived) Binders	\$1,500-\$1,900
Polymeric Emulsion Blend Binders	\$900-\$1,900
Cementitious-Based Binders	\$1,000-\$1,500

Source: Cost information received from individual product manufacturers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004). Adjusted for inflation (2016 dollars) by Tetra Tech Inc.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident should be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.

- Reapply the selected soil binder as needed to maintain effectiveness.

<b>Table 1 Properties of Soil Binders for Erosion Control</b>				
<b>Evaluation Criteria</b>	<b>Binder Type</b>			
	<b>Plant Material Based (Short Lived)</b>	<b>Plant Material Based (Long Lived)</b>	<b>Polymeric Emulsion Blends</b>	<b>Cementitious-Based Binders</b>
Relative Cost	Low	Moderate to High	Low to High	Low to Moderate
Resistance to Leaching	High	High	Low to Moderate	Moderate
Resistance to Abrasion	Moderate	Low	Moderate to High	Moderate to High
Longevity	Short to Medium	Medium	Medium to Long	Medium
Minimum Curing Time before Rain	9 to 18 hours	19 to 24 hours	0 to 24 hours	4 to 8 hours
Compatibility with Existing Vegetation	Good	Poor	Poor	Poor
Mode of Degradation	Biodegradable	Biodegradable	Photodegradable/Chemically Degradable	Photodegradable/Chemically Degradable
Labor Intensive	No	No	No	No
Specialized Application Equipment	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher	Water Truck or Hydraulic Mulcher
Liquid/Powder	Powder	Liquid	Liquid/Powder	Powder
Surface Crusting	Yes, but dissolves on rewetting	Yes	Yes, but dissolves on rewetting	Yes
Clean Up	Water	Water	Water	Water
Erosion Control Application Rate	Varies <sup>(1)</sup>	Varies <sup>(1)</sup>	Varies <sup>(1)</sup>	4,000 to 12,000 lbs/acre

(1) See Implementation for specific rates.



## References

Erosion Control Pilot Study Report, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), June 2000.

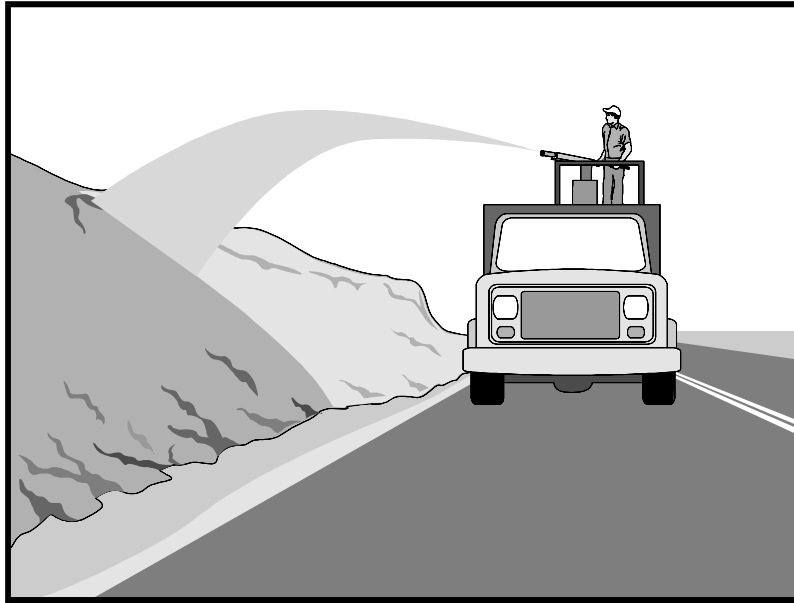
Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control, An Inventory of Current Practices Draft, US EPA, April 1990.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities, Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.



## Description and Purpose

Straw mulch consists of placing a uniform layer of straw and incorporating it into the soil with a studded roller or crimper or anchoring it with a tackifier or stabilizing emulsion. Straw mulch protects the soil surface from the impact of rain drops, preventing soil particles from becoming dislodged.

## Suitable Applications

Straw mulch is suitable for disturbed areas requiring temporary protection until permanent stabilization is established. Straw mulch can be specified for the following applications:

- As a stand-alone BMP on disturbed areas until soils can be prepared for permanent vegetation. The longevity of straw mulch is typically less than six months.
- Applied in combination with temporary seeding strategies
- Applied in combination with permanent seeding strategies to enhance plant establishment and final soil stabilization
- Applied around containerized plantings to control erosion until the plants become established to provide permanent stabilization

## Limitations

Availability of straw and straw blowing equipment may be limited just prior to the rainy season and prior to storms due to high demand.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-4 Hydroseeding
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats
- EC-8 Wood Mulching
- EC-14 Compost Blanket

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- There is a potential for introduction of weed seed and unwanted plant material if weed-free agricultural straw is not specified.
- Straw mulch applied by hand is more time intensive and potentially costly.
- Wind may limit application of straw and blow straw into undesired locations.
- May have to be removed prior to permanent seeding or prior to further earthwork.
- “Punching” of straw does not work in sandy soils, necessitating the use of tackifiers.
- Potential fugitive dust control issues associated with straw applications can occur. Application of a stabilizing emulsion or a water stream at the same time straw is being blown can reduce this problem.
- Use of plastic netting should be avoided in areas where wildlife may be entrapped and may be prohibited for projects in certain areas with sensitive wildlife species, especially reptiles and amphibians.

## Implementation

- Straw should be derived from weed-free wheat, rice, or barley. Where required by the plans, specifications, permits, or environmental documents, native grass straw should be used.
- Use tackifier to anchor straw mulch to the soil on slopes.
- Crimping, punch roller-type rollers, or track walking may also be used to incorporate straw mulch into the soil on slopes. Track walking can be used where other methods are impractical.
- Avoid placing straw onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, sound walls, existing vegetation, etc.
- Straw mulch with tackifier should not be applied during or immediately before rainfall.
- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

## Application Procedures

- When using a tackifier to anchor the straw mulch, roughen embankment or fill areas by rolling with a crimping or punching-type roller or by track walking before placing the straw mulch. Track walking should only be used where rolling is impractical.
- Apply straw at a rate of between 3,000 and 4,000 lb./acre, either by machine or by hand distribution and provide 100% ground cover. A lighter application is used for flat surfaces and a heavier application is used for slopes.
- Evenly distribute straw mulch on the soil surface.
- Anchoring straw mulch to the soil surface by “punching” it into the soil mechanically (incorporating) can be used in lieu of a tackifier.

- Methods for holding the straw mulch in place depend upon the slope steepness, accessibility, soil conditions, and longevity.
  - A tackifier acts to glue the straw fibers together and to the soil surface. The tackifier should be selected based on longevity and ability to hold the fibers in place. A tackifier is typically applied at a rate of 125 lb./acre. In windy conditions, the rates are typically 180 lb./acre.
  - On very small areas, a spade or shovel can be used to punch in straw mulch.
  - On slopes with soils that are stable enough and of sufficient gradient to safely support construction equipment without contributing to compaction and instability problems, straw can be "punched" into the ground using a knife blade roller or a straight bladed coultter, known commercially as a "crimper."

## Costs

Average annual cost for installation and maintenance is included in the table below. Application by hand is more time intensive and potentially more costly.

BMP	Unit Cost per Acre
Straw mulch, crimped or punched	\$3,150-\$6,900
Straw mulch with tackifier	\$2,300-\$6,200

Source: Cost information received from individual product suppliers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004). Adjusted for inflation (2016 dollars) by Tetra Tech, Inc.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident should be repaired and BMPs re-applied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require re-application of BMPs.
- The key consideration in inspection and maintenance is that the straw needs to last long enough to achieve erosion control objectives. Straw mulch as a stand-alone BMP is temporary and is not suited for long-term erosion control.
- Maintain an unbroken, temporary mulched ground cover while disturbed soil areas are inactive. Repair any damaged ground cover and re-mulch exposed areas.
- Reapplication of straw mulch and tackifier may be required to maintain effective soil stabilization over disturbed areas and slopes.

## References

Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls: Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.

Controlling Erosion of Construction Sites, Agricultural Information Bulletin #347, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) (formerly Soil Conservation Service – SCS).

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Control in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

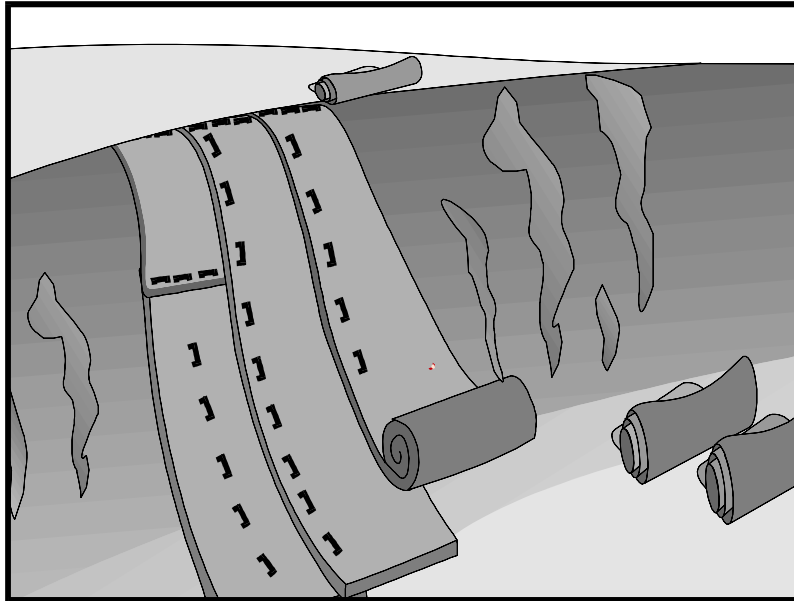
Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Soil Erosion by Water, Agricultural Information Bulletin #513, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



## Description and Purpose

Rolled Erosion Control Products (RECPs), also known as erosion control matting or blankets, can be made of natural or synthetic materials or a combination of the two. RECPs are used to cover the soil surface to reduce erosion from rainfall impact, hold soil in place, and absorb and hold moisture near the soil surface. Additionally, RECPs may be used to stabilize soils until vegetation is established or to reinforce non-woody surface vegetation.

## Suitable Applications

RECPs are typically applied on slopes where erosion hazard is high, and vegetation will be slow to establish. Mattings are also used on stream banks, swales and other drainage channels where moving water at velocities between 3 ft/s and 6 ft/s are likely to cause scour and wash out new vegetation and in areas where the soil surface is disturbed and where existing vegetation has been removed. RECPs may also be used when seeding cannot occur (e.g., late season construction and/or the arrival of an early rain season). RECPs should be considered when the soils are fine grained and potentially erosive. RECPs should be considered in the following situations:

- Steep slopes, generally steeper than 3:1 (H:V).
- Long slopes.
- Slopes where the erosion potential is high.
- Slopes and disturbed soils where mulch must be anchored.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-4 Hydroseeding

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- Disturbed areas where temporary cover is needed, or plants are slow to establish or will not establish.
- Channels with flows exceeding 3.3 ft/s.
- Channels to be vegetated.
- Stockpiles.
- Slopes adjacent to water bodies.

## Limitations

- RECP installed costs are generally higher than other erosion control BMPs, limiting their use to areas where other BMPs are ineffective (e.g., channels, steep slopes).
- RECPs may delay seed germination, due to reduction in soil temperature and/or sunlight.
- RECPs are generally not suitable for excessively rocky sites or areas where the final vegetation will be mowed (since staples and netting can catch in mowers). If a staple or pin cannot be driven into the soil because the underlying soil is too hard or rocky, then an alternative BMP should be selected.
- If used for temporary erosion control, RECPs should be removed and disposed of prior to application of permanent soil stabilization measures.
- The use of plastic sheeting should be limited to covering stockpiles or very small graded areas for short periods of time (such as through one imminent storm event) until other measures, such as seeding and mulching, may be installed.
  - Plastic sheeting is easily vandalized, easily torn, photodegradable, and must be disposed of at a landfill.
  - Plastic sheeting results in 100% runoff, which may cause serious erosion problems in the areas receiving the increased flow.
- According to the State Water Board's *CGP Review, Issue #2*, only RECPs that either do not contain plastic netting or contain netting manufactured from 100% biodegradable non-plastic materials, such as jute, sisal, or coir fiber should be used due to plastic pollution and wildlife concerns. If a plastic-netted product is used for temporary stabilization, it must be promptly removed when no longer needed and removed or replaced with non-plastic netted RECPs for final stabilization.
- RECPs may have limitations based on soil type, slope gradient, or channel flow rate; consult the manufacturer for proper selection.
- Not suitable for areas that have foot traffic (tripping hazard) – e.g., pad areas around buildings under construction.
- RECPs that incorporate a plastic netting (e.g. straw blanket typically uses a plastic netting to hold the straw in place) may not be suitable near known wildlife habitat. Wildlife can become trapped in the plastic netting. As per State Water Board guidance, RECPs that

contain plastic netting are discouraged for temporary controls and are not acceptable alternatives for permanent controls. RECPs that do not contain plastic netting or contain netting manufactured from 100% biodegradable non-plastic materials such as jute, sisal, or coir fiber should be used.

- RECPs may have limitations in extremely windy climates; they are susceptible to wind damage and displacement. However, when RECPs are properly trenched at the top and bottom and stapled in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, problems with wind can be minimized.

## **Implementation**

### **Material Selection**

- Natural RECPs have been found to be effective where re-vegetation will be provided by re-seeding. The choice of material should be based on the size of area, side slopes, surface conditions such as hardness, moisture, weed growth, and availability of materials.
- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.
- The following natural and synthetic RECPs are commonly used:

### **Geotextiles**

- Material can be a woven or a non-woven polypropylene fabric with minimum thickness of 0.06 in., minimum width of 12 ft and should have minimum tensile strength of 150 lbs (warp), 80 lbs (fill) in conformance with the requirements in ASTM Designation: D 4632. The permittivity of the fabric should be approximately  $0.07 \text{ sec}^{-1}$  in conformance with the requirements in ASTM Designation: D4491. The fabric should have an ultraviolet (UV) stability of 70 percent in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation: D4355. Geotextile blankets must be secured in place with wire staples or sandbags and by keying into tops of slopes to prevent infiltration of surface waters under geotextile. Staples should be made of minimum 11-gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- Geotextiles may be reused if they are suitable for the use intended.

### **Plastic Covers**

- Generally plastic sheeting should only be used as stockpile covering or for very small graded areas for short periods of time (such as through one imminent storm event). If plastic sheeting must be used, choose a plastic that will withstand photo degradation.
- Plastic sheeting should have a minimum thickness of 6 mils and must be keyed in at the top of slope (when used as a temporary slope protection) and firmly held in place with sandbags or other weights placed no more than 10 ft apart. Seams are typically taped or weighted down their entire length, and there should be at least a 12 in. to 24 in. overlap of all seams. Edges should be embedded a minimum of 6 in. in soil (when used as a temporary slope protection).
- All sheeting must be inspected periodically after installation and after significant rainstorms to check for erosion, undermining, and anchorage failure. Any failures must be repaired



immediately. If washout or breakages occur, the material should be re-installed after repairing the damage to the slope.

## ***Erosion Control Blankets/Mats***

- Biodegradable RECPs are typically composed of jute fibers, curled wood fibers, straw, coconut fiber, or a combination of these materials. In order for an RECP to be considered 100% biodegradable, the netting, sewing or adhesive system that holds the biodegradable mulch fibers together must also be biodegradable. See typical installation details at the end of this fact sheet.
- **Jute** is a natural fiber that is made into a yarn that is loosely woven into a biodegradable mesh. The performance of jute as a stand-alone RECP is low. Most other RECPs outperform jute as a temporary erosion control product and therefore jute is not commonly used. It is designed to be used in conjunction with vegetation. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which should be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Excelsior** (curled wood fiber) blanket material should consist of machine produced mats of curled wood excelsior with 80 percent of the fiber 6 in. or longer. The excelsior blanket should be of consistent thickness. The wood fiber must be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. The top surface of the blanket should be covered with a photodegradable extruded plastic mesh. The blanket should be smolder resistant without the use of chemical additives and should be non-toxic and non-injurious to plant and animal life. Excelsior blankets should be furnished in rolled strips, a minimum of 48 in. wide, and should have an average weight of 0.8 lb/yd<sup>2</sup>,  $\pm 10$  percent, at the time of manufacture. Excelsior blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11-gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- **Straw blanket** should be machine produced mats of straw with a lightweight biodegradable netting top layer. The straw should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The straw blanket should be of consistent thickness. The straw should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Straw blanket should be furnished in rolled strips a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft long and a minimum of 0.5 lb/yd<sup>2</sup>. Straw blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11-gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- **Wood fiber blanket** is composed of biodegradable fiber mulch with extruded plastic netting held together with adhesives. The material is designed to enhance re-vegetation. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which must be secured to the ground with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Coconut fiber blanket** should be a machine produced mat of 100 percent coconut fiber with biodegradable netting on the top and bottom. The coconut fiber should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The coconut fiber blanket should be of consistent thickness. The coconut fiber should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Coconut fiber blanket should be furnished in rolled strips with a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft. long and a minimum of 0.5

lb/yd<sup>2</sup>. Coconut fiber blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11-gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.

- **Coconut fiber mesh** is a thin permeable membrane made from coconut or corn fiber that is spun into a yarn and woven into a biodegradable mat. It is designed to be used in conjunction with vegetation and typically has longevity of several years. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Straw coconut fiber blanket** should be machine produced mats of 70 percent straw and 30 percent coconut fiber with a biodegradable netting top layer and a biodegradable bottom net. The straw and coconut fiber should be attached to the netting with biodegradable thread or glue strips. The straw coconut fiber blanket should be of consistent thickness. The straw and coconut fiber should be evenly distributed over the entire area of the blanket. Straw coconut fiber blanket should be furnished in rolled strips a minimum of 6.5 ft wide, a minimum of 80 ft long and a minimum of 0.5 lb/yd<sup>2</sup>. Straw coconut fiber blankets must be secured in place with wire staples. Staples should be made of minimum 11-gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- Non-biodegradable RECPs are typically composed of polypropylene, polyethylene, nylon or other synthetic fibers. In some cases, a combination of biodegradable and synthetic fibers is used to construct the RECP. Netting used to hold these fibers together is typically non-biodegradable as well. Only biodegradable RECPs can remain on a site applying for a Notice of Termination due to plastic pollution and wild life concerns (State Waterboard, 2016). RECPs containing plastic that are used on a site must be disposed of for final stabilization.
- **Plastic netting** is a lightweight biaxially oriented netting designed for securing loose mulches like straw or paper to soil surfaces to establish vegetation. The netting is photodegradable. The netting is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Plastic mesh** is an open weave geotextile that is composed of an extruded synthetic fiber woven into a mesh with an opening size of less than 1/4 in. It is used with re-vegetation or may be used to secure loose fiber such as straw to the ground. The material is supplied in rolled strips, which must be secured to the soil with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Synthetic fiber with netting** is a mat that is composed of durable synthetic fibers treated to resist chemicals and ultraviolet light. The mat is a dense, three-dimensional mesh of synthetic (typically polyolefin) fibers stitched between two polypropylene nets. The mats are designed to be re-vegetated and provide a permanent composite system of soil, roots, and geomatrix. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.
- **Bonded synthetic fibers** consist of a three-dimensional geometric nylon (or other synthetic) matting. Typically, it has more than 90 percent open area, which facilitates

root growth. It's tough root reinforcing system anchors vegetation and protects against hydraulic lift and shear forces created by high volume discharges. It can be installed over prepared soil, followed by seeding into the mat. Once vegetated, it becomes an invisible composite system of soil, roots, and geomatrix. The material is furnished in rolled strips that must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

- **Combination synthetic and biodegradable RECPs** consist of biodegradable fibers, such as wood fiber or coconut fiber, with a heavy polypropylene net stitched to the top and a high strength continuous filament geomatrix or net stitched to the bottom. The material is designed to enhance re-vegetation. The material is furnished in rolled strips, which must be secured with U-shaped staples or stakes in accordance with manufacturers' recommendations.

## ***Site Preparation***

- Proper soil preparation is essential to ensure complete contact of the RECP with the soil. Soil Roughening is not recommended in areas where RECPs will be installed.
- Grade and shape the area of installation.
- Remove all rocks, clods, vegetation or other obstructions so that the installed blankets or mats will have complete, direct contact with the soil.
- Prepare seedbed by loosening 2 to 3 in. of topsoil.

## ***Seeding/Planting***

Seed the area before blanket installation for erosion control and re-vegetation. Seeding after mat installation is often specified for turf reinforcement application. When seeding prior to blanket installation, all areas disturbed during blanket installation must be re-seeded. Where soil filling is specified for turf reinforcement mats (TRMs), seed the matting and the entire disturbed area after installation and prior to filling the mat with soil.

Fertilize and seed in accordance with seeding specifications or other types of landscaping plans. The protective matting can be laid over areas where grass has been planted and the seedlings have emerged. Where vines or other ground covers are to be planted, lay the protective matting first and then plant through matting according to design of planting.

## ***Check Slots***

Check slots shall be installed as required by the manufacturer.

## ***Laying and Securing Matting***

- Before laying the matting, all check slots should be installed and the seedbed should be friable, made free from clods, rocks, and roots. The surface should be compacted and finished according to the requirements of the manufacturer's recommendations.
- Mechanical or manual lay down equipment should be capable of handling full rolls of fabric and laying the fabric smoothly without wrinkles or folds. The equipment should meet the fabric manufacturer's recommendations or equivalent standards.

## ***Anchoring***

- U-shaped wire staples, metal geotextile stake pins, or triangular wooden stakes can be used to anchor mats and blankets to the ground surface.
- Wire staples should be made of minimum 11-gauge steel wire and should be U-shaped with 8 in. legs and 2 in. crown.
- Metal stake pins should be 0.188 in. diameter steel with a 1.5 in. steel washer at the head of the pin, and 8 in. in length.
- Wire staples and metal stakes should be driven flush to the soil surface.

## ***Installation on Slopes***

Installation should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In general, these will be as follows:

- Begin at the top of the slope and anchor the blanket in a 6 in. deep by 6 in. wide trench. Backfill trench and tamp earth firmly.
- Unroll blanket down slope in the direction of water flow.
- Overlap the edges of adjacent parallel rolls 2 to 3 in. and staple every 3 ft (or greater, per manufacturer's specifications).
- When blankets must be spliced, place blankets end over end (shingle style) with 6 in. overlap. Staple through overlapped area, approximately 12 in. apart.
- Lay blankets loosely and maintain direct contact with the soil. Do not stretch.
- Staple blankets sufficiently to anchor blanket and maintain contact with the soil. Staples should be placed down the center and staggered with the staples placed along the edges. Steep slopes, 1:1 (H:V) to 2:1 (H:V), require a minimum of 2 staples/yd<sup>2</sup>. Moderate slopes, 2:1 (H:V) to 3:1 (H:V), require a minimum of 1 1/2 staples/yd<sup>2</sup>. Check manufacturer's specifications to determine if a higher density staple pattern is required.

## ***Installation in Channels***

Installation should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In general, these will be as follows:

- Dig initial anchor trench 12 in. deep and 6 in. wide across the channel at the lower end of the project area.
- Excavate intermittent check slots, 6 in. deep and 6 in. wide across the channel at 25 to 30 ft intervals along the channels.
- Cut longitudinal channel anchor trenches 4 in. deep and 4 in. wide along each side of the installation to bury edges of matting, whenever possible extend matting 2 to 3 in. above the crest of the channel side slopes.

- Beginning at the downstream end and in the center of the channel, place the initial end of the first roll in the anchor trench and secure with fastening devices at 12 in. intervals. Note: matting will initially be upside down in anchor trench.
- In the same manner, position adjacent rolls in anchor trench, overlapping the preceding roll a minimum of 3 in.
- Secure these initial ends of mats with anchors at 12 in. intervals, backfill and compact soil.
- Unroll center strip of matting upstream. Stop at next check slot or terminal anchor trench. Unroll adjacent mats upstream in similar fashion, maintaining a 3 in. overlap.
- Fold and secure all rolls of matting snugly into all transverse check slots. Lay mat in the bottom of the slot then fold back against itself. Anchor through both layers of mat at 12 in. intervals, then backfill and compact soil. Continue rolling all mat widths upstream to the next check slot or terminal anchor trench.
- Alternate method for non-critical installations: Place two rows of anchors on 6 in. centers at 25 to 30 ft. intervals in lieu of excavated check slots.
- Staple shingled lap spliced ends a minimum of 12 in. apart on 12 in. intervals.
- Place edges of outside mats in previously excavated longitudinal slots; anchor using prescribed staple pattern, backfill, and compact soil.
- Anchor, fill, and compact upstream end of mat in a 12 in. by 6 in. terminal trench.
- Secure mat to ground surface using U-shaped wire staples, geotextile pins, or wooden stakes.
- Seed and fill turf reinforcement matting with soil, if specified.

## ***Soil Filling (if specified for turf reinforcement mat (TRM))***

Installation should be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Typical installation guidelines are as follows:

- After seeding, spread and lightly rake 1/2-3/4 inches of fine topsoil into the TRM apertures to completely fill TRM thickness. Use backside of rake or other flat implement.
- Alternatively, if allowed by product specifications, spread topsoil using lightweight loader, backhoe, or other power equipment. Avoid sharp turns with equipment.
- Always consult the manufacturer's recommendations for installation.
- Do not drive tracked or heavy equipment over mat.
- Avoid any traffic over matting if loose or wet soil conditions exist.
- Use shovels, rakes, or brooms for fine grading and touch up.
- Smooth out soil filling just exposing top netting of mat.

## ***Temporary Soil Stabilization Removal***

- Temporary soil stabilization removed from the site of the work must be disposed of if necessary.

## **Costs**

Installed costs can be relatively high compared to other BMPs. Approximate costs for installed materials are shown below:

Rolled Erosion Control Products		Installed Cost per Acre
Biodegradable	Jute Mesh	\$7,700-\$9,000
	Curled Wood Fiber	\$10,200-\$13,400
	Straw	\$10,200-\$13,400
	Wood Fiber	\$10,200-\$13,400
	Coconut Fiber	\$16,600-\$18,000
	Coconut Fiber Mesh	\$38,400-\$42,200
	Straw Coconut Fiber	\$12,800-\$15,400
Non-Biodegradable	Plastic Netting	\$2,600-\$2,800
	Plastic Mesh	\$3,800-\$4,500
	Synthetic Fiber with Netting	\$43,500-\$51,200
	Bonded Synthetic Fibers	\$57,600-\$70,400
	Combination with Biodegradable	\$38,400-\$46,100

Source: Cost information received from individual product manufacturers solicited by Geosyntec Consultants (2004). Adjusted for inflation (2016 dollars) by Tetra Tech, Inc.

## ***Inspection and Maintenance***

- RECPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident shall be repaired and BMPs reapplied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require reapplication of BMPs.
- If washout or breakage occurs, re-install the material after repairing the damage to the slope or channel.
- Make sure matting is uniformly in contact with the soil.
- Check that all the lap joints are secure.
- Check that staples are flush with the ground.

## References

CGP Review #2, State Water Resources Control Board, 2014. Available online at: [http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/stormwater/docs/training/cgp\\_review\\_issue2.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/docs/training/cgp_review_issue2.pdf).

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005

Erosion Control Pilot Study Report, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), June 2000.

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Controls in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

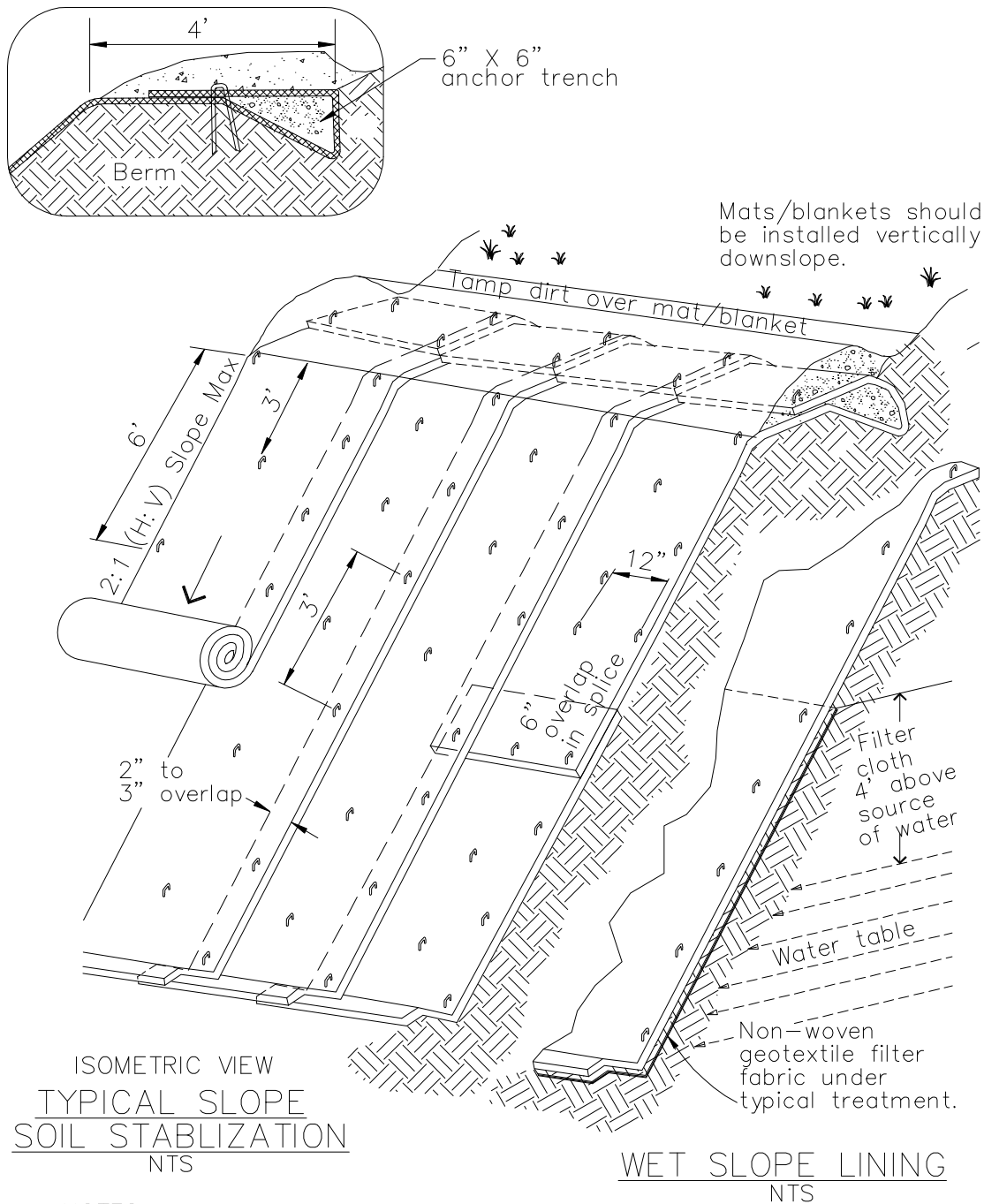
National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Guidance Document: Soil Stabilization for Temporary Slopes, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 1999.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for The Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

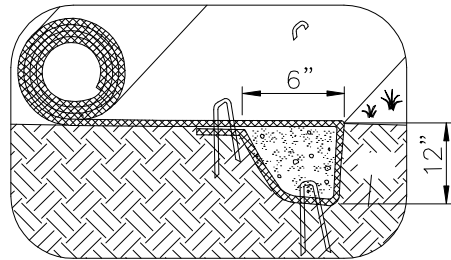


## NOTES:

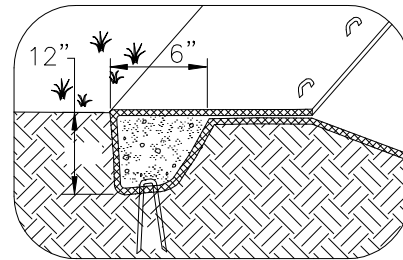
1. Slope surface shall be free of rocks, clods, sticks and grass. Mats/blankets shall have good soil contact.
2. Lay blankets loosely and stake or staple to maintain direct contact with the soil. Do not stretch.
3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations

## TYPICAL INSTALLATION DETAIL

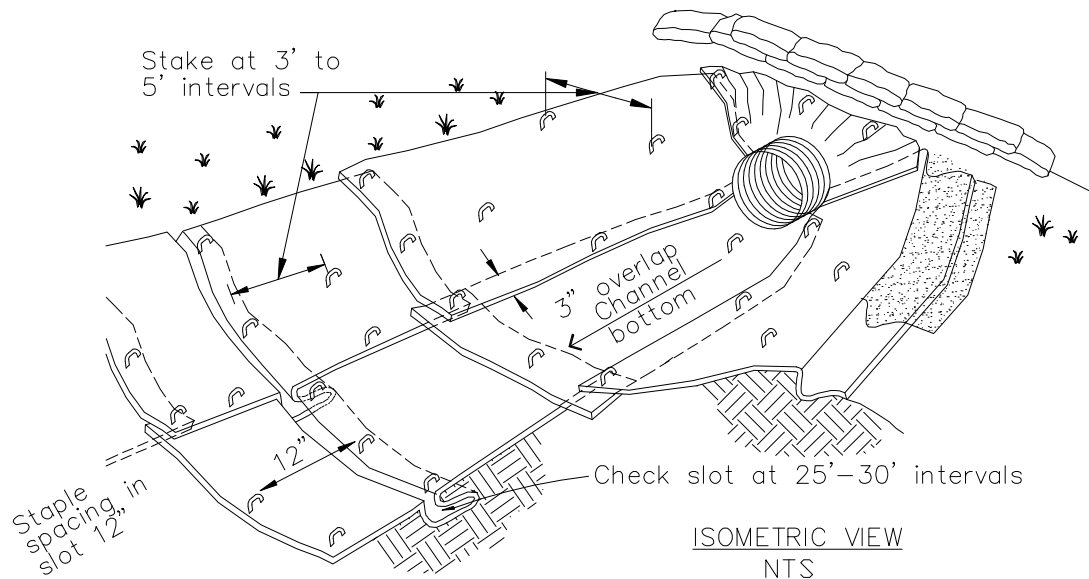




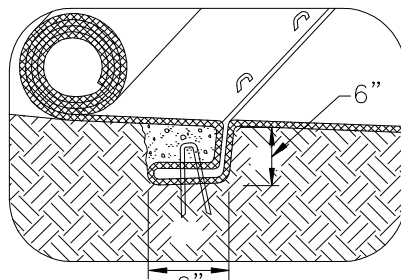
INITIAL CHANNEL ANCHOR TRENCH  
NTS



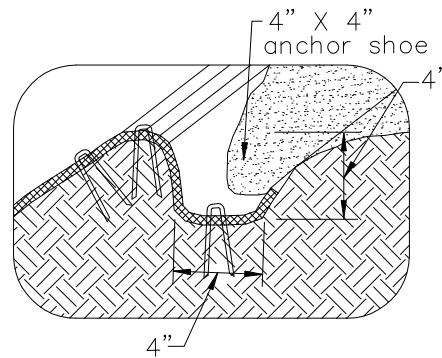
TERMINAL SLOPE AND CHANNEL  
ANCHOR TRENCH  
NTS



ISOMETRIC VIEW  
NTS



INTERMITTENT CHECK SLOT  
NTS



LONGITUDINAL ANCHOR TRENCH  
NTS

## NOTES:

1. Check slots to be constructed per manufacturers specifications.
2. Staking or stapling layout per manufacturers specifications.
3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations

## TYPICAL INSTALLATION DETAIL



## Description and Purpose

Wood mulching consists of applying a mixture of shredded wood mulch or bark to disturbed soils. The primary function of wood mulching is to reduce erosion by protecting bare soil from rainfall impact, increasing infiltration, and reducing runoff.

## Suitable Applications

Wood mulching is suitable for disturbed soil areas requiring temporary protection until permanent stabilization is established. Wood mulch may also be used for final stabilization; generally, used in a landscape setting or areas that will have pedestrian traffic.

## Limitations

- Best suited to flat areas or gentle slopes or 5:1 (H:V) or flatter. Not suitable for use on slopes steeper than 3:1 (H:V). For slopes steeper than 3:1, consider the use of Compost Blankets (EC-14).
- Wood mulch may introduce unwanted species if it contains seed, although it may also be used to prevent weed growth if it is seed-free.
- Not suitable for areas exposed to concentrated flows.
- If used for temporary stabilization, wood mulch may need to be removed prior to further earthwork.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Objective**
- ☒ **Secondary Objective**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-4 Hydroseeding
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-6 Straw Mulch
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



## Implementation

### *Mulch Selection*

There are many types of mulches. Selection of the appropriate type of mulch should be based on the type of application, site conditions, and compatibility with planned or future uses.

### *Application Procedures*

Prior to application, after existing vegetation has been removed, roughen embankment and fill areas by rolling with a device such as a punching type roller or by track walking. The construction application procedures for mulches vary significantly depending upon the type of mulching method specified. Two methods are highlighted here:

- **Green Material:** This type of mulch is produced by the recycling of vegetation trimmings such as grass, shredded shrubs, and trees. Chipped brush from on-site vegetation clearing activities may be used (this may require stockpiling and reapplying after earthwork is complete). Methods of application are generally by hand although pneumatic methods are available.
  - Green material can be used as a temporary ground cover with or without seeding.
  - The green material should be evenly distributed on site to a depth of not more than 2 in.
- **Shredded Wood:** Suitable for ground cover in ornamental or revegetated plantings.
  - Shredded wood/bark is conditionally suitable. See note under limitations.
  - Distribute by hand or use pneumatic methods.
  - Evenly distribute the mulch across the soil surface to a depth of 2 to 3 in.
- Avoid mulch placement onto roads, sidewalks, drainage channels, existing vegetation, etc.

## Costs

Assuming a 2-in. layer of wholesale landscaping-grade wood mulch, the average one-time cost for installation may range from \$15,000 – \$23,000 per acre<sup>1</sup>. Costs can increase if the source is not close to the project site.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Areas where erosion is evident shall be repaired and BMPs reapplied as soon as possible. Care should be exercised to minimize the damage to protected areas while making repairs, as any area damaged will require reapplication of BMPs.

---

<sup>1</sup> Costs based on estimates provided by the California Department of Transportation's *Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls Cost Survey Technical Memorandum*, CTSW-TM-07-172.35.1, July 2007 (available at: [http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/LandArch/16\\_la\\_design/guidance/estimating/Soil\\_Stabilization\\_Pricing.pdf](http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/LandArch/16_la_design/guidance/estimating/Soil_Stabilization_Pricing.pdf)) and adjusted for inflation from 1997 to 2016.

- Regardless of the mulching technique selected, the key consideration in inspection and maintenance is that the mulch needs to last long enough to achieve erosion control objectives. If the mulch is applied as a stand-alone erosion control method over disturbed areas (without seed), it should last the length of time the site will remain barren or until final re-grading and revegetation.
- Where vegetation is not the ultimate cover, such as ornamental and landscape applications of bark or wood chips, inspection and maintenance should focus on longevity and integrity of the mulch.
- Reapply mulch when bare earth becomes visible.

## References

Controlling Erosion of Construction Sites Agriculture Information Bulletin #347, U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) (formerly Soil Conservation Service – SCS).

Guides for Erosion and Sediment Control in California, USDA Soils Conservation Service, January 1991.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, Work Group Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control, An Inventory of Current Practices Draft, U.S. EPA, April 1990.

Soil Erosion by Water Agricultural Information Bulletin #513, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service.

Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, CTSW-TM-07-172.35.1, California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007. Available online at:  
[http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/LandArch/16\\_la\\_design/guidance/estimating/Soil\\_Stabilization\\_Pricing.pdf](http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/LandArch/16_la_design/guidance/estimating/Soil_Stabilization_Pricing.pdf).

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



## Description and Purpose

Soil Preparation/Roughening involves assessment and preparation of surface soils for BMP installation. This can include soil testing (for seed base, soil characteristics, or nutrients), as well as roughening surface soils by mechanical methods (including sheepsfoot rolling, track walking, scarifying, stair stepping, and imprinting) to prepare soil for additional BMPs, or to break up sheet flow. Soil Preparation can also involve tilling topsoil to prepare a seed bed and/or incorporation of soil amendments, to enhance vegetative establishment.

## Suitable Applications

**Soil preparation:** Soil preparation is essential to proper vegetative establishment. In particular, soil preparation (i.e. tilling, raking, and amendment) is suitable for use in combination with any soil stabilization method, including Rolled Erosion Control Products (RECPs) or sod. Soil preparation should not be confused with roughening.

**Roughening:** Soil roughening is generally referred to as track walking (sometimes called imprinting) a slope, where treads from heavy equipment run parallel to the contours of the slope and act as mini terraces. Soil preparation is most effective when used in combination with erosion controls. Soil Roughening is suitable for use as a complementary process for controlling erosion on a site. Roughening is not intended to be used as a stand-alone BMP, and should be used with perimeter controls, additional erosion control measures, grade breaks, and vegetative establishment for maximum effectiveness. Roughening is intended to only affect surface soils and should not compromise slope stability or overall compaction. Suitable applications for soil roughening include:

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch
- EC-5 Soil Binders
- EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- Along any disturbed slopes, including temporary stockpiles, sediment basins, or compacted soil diversion berms and swales.
- Roughening should be used in combination with hydraulically applied stabilization methods, compost blanket, or straw mulch; but should not be used in combination with RECPs or sod because roughening is intended to leave terraces on the slope.

## Limitations

- Preparation and roughening must take place prior to installing other erosion controls (such as hydraulically applied stabilizers) or sediment controls (such as fiber rolls) on the faces of slopes.
- In such cases where slope preparation is minimal, erosion control/revegetation BMPs that do not require extensive soil preparation - such as hydraulic mulching and seeding applications - should be employed.
- Consideration should be given to the type of erosion control BMP that follows surface preparation, as some BMPs are not designed to be installed over various types of tillage/roughening, i.e., RECPs should not be used with soil roughening due to a “bridging” effect, which suspends the blanket above the seed bed.
- Surface roughness has an effect on the amount of mulch material that needs to be applied, which shows up as a general increase in mulch material due to an increase in surface area (Topographic Index -see EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch).

## Implementation

- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

## General

A roughened surface can significantly reduce erosion. Based on tests done at the San Diego State Erosion Research Laboratory, various roughening techniques on slopes can result in a 12 - 76% reduction in the erosion rate versus smooth slopes.

## Materials

Minimal materials are required unless amendments and/or seed are added to the soil. The majority of soil roughening/preparation can be done with equipment that is on hand at a normal construction site, such as bull dozers and compaction equipment.

## Installation Guidelines

### Soil Preparation

- Where appropriate or feasible, soil should be prepared to receive the seed by disking or otherwise scarifying the surface to eliminate crust, improve air and water infiltration and create a more favorable environment for germination and growth.
- Based upon soil testing conducted, apply additional soil amendments (e.g., fertilizers, additional seed) to the soil to help with germination. Follow EC-4, Hydroseeding, when selecting and applying seed and fertilizers.

## **Cut Slope Roughening:**

- Stair-step grade or groove the cut slopes that are steeper than 3:1.
- Use stair-step grading on any erodible material soft enough to be ripped with a bulldozer. Slopes consisting of soft rock with some subsoil are particularly suited to stair-step grading.
- Make the vertical cut distance less than the horizontal distance, and slightly slope the horizontal position of the "step" in toward the vertical wall.
- Do not make individual vertical cuts more than 2 ft. (0.6 m) high in soft materials or more than 3 ft. (0.9 m) high in rocky materials.
- Groove the slope using machinery to create a series of ridges and depressions that run across the slope, on the contour.

## **Fill Slope Roughening:**

- Place on fill slopes with a gradient steeper than 3:1 in lifts not to exceed 8 in. (0.2 m), and make sure each lift is properly compacted.
- Ensure that the face of the slope consists of loose, uncompacted fill 4-6 in. (0.1-0.2 m) deep.
- Use grooving or tracking to roughen the face of the slopes, if necessary.
- Do not blade or scrape the final slope face.

## **Roughening for Slopes to be Mowed:**

- Slopes that require mowing activities should not be steeper than 3:1.
- Roughen these areas to shallow grooves by track walking, scarifying, sheepfoot rolling, or imprinting.
- Make grooves close together (less than 10 in.), and not less than 1 in. deep, and perpendicular to the direction of runoff (i.e., parallel to the slope contours).
- Excessive roughness is undesirable where mowing is planned.

## **Roughening with Tracked Machinery:**

- Limit roughening with tracked machinery to soils with a sandy textural component to avoid undue compaction of the soil surface.
- Operate tracked machinery up and down the slope to leave horizontal depressions in the soil. Do not back-blade during the final grading operation.
- Seed and mulch roughened areas as soon as possible to obtain optimum seed germination and growth.

## Costs

Costs are based on the additional labor of tracking or preparation of the slope plus the cost of any required soil amendment materials.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Check the seeded slopes for signs of erosion such as rills and gullies. Fill these areas slightly above the original grade, then reseed and mulch as soon as possible.
- Inspect BMPs weekly during normal operations, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.

## References

Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls: Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.





## Description and Purpose

Non-vegetative stabilization methods are used for temporary or permanent stabilization of areas prone to erosion and should be used only where vegetative options are not feasible; examples include:

- Areas of vehicular or pedestrian traffic such as roads or paths;
- Arid environments where vegetation would not provide timely ground coverage, or would require excessive irrigation;
- Rocky substrate, infertile or droughty soils where vegetation would be difficult to establish; and
- Areas where vegetation will not grow adequately within the construction time frame.

There are several non-vegetative stabilization methods and selection should be based on site-specific conditions.

**Decomposed Granite (DG)** is a permanent erosion protection method that consists of a layer of stabilized decomposed granite placed over an erodible surface.

**Degradable Mulches** of various types (see EC-3, EC-6, EC-8) can be used for temporary non-vegetative stabilization; examples include straw mulch, compost, wood chips or hydraulic mulch.

**Geotextiles and Mats** can be used for temporary non-vegetative stabilization (see EC-7). These BMPs are typically manufactured from degradable or synthetic materials and are

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TR	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**  
☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



designed and specified based on their functional longevity, i.e., how long they will persist and provide erosion protection. All geotextiles and mats should be replaced when they exceed their functional longevity or when permanent stabilization methods are instituted.

**Gravel Mulch** is a non-degradable erosion control product that is composed of washed and screened coarse to very coarse gravel, 16 mm to 64 mm (0.6" - 2.5"), similar to an AASHTO No. 3 coarse aggregate.

**Rock Slope Protection** consists of utilizing large rock or rip-rap (4" - 24") to stabilize slopes with a high erosion potential and those subject to scour along waterways.

**Soil Binders** can be used for temporary non-vegetative stabilization (see EC-5). The key to their use is functional longevity. In most cases, the soil binder will need to be routinely monitored and re-applied to maintain an erosion-resistant coverage.

## Suitable Applications

Non-vegetated stabilization methods are suitable for use on disturbed soil areas and on material stockpiles that need to be temporarily or permanently protected from erosion by water and wind. Non-vegetated stabilization should only be utilized when vegetation cannot be established in the required timeframe, due to soil or climactic conditions, or where vegetation may be a potential fire hazard.

**Decomposed Granite (DG) and Gravel Mulch** are suitable for use in areas where vegetation establishment is difficult, on flat surfaces, trails and pathways, and when used in conjunction with a stabilizer or tackifier, on shallow slopes (i.e., 10:1 [H:V]). DG and gravel can also be used on shallow rocky slopes where vegetation cannot be established for permanent erosion control.

**Degradable Mulches** can be used to cover and protect soil surfaces from erosion both in temporary and permanent applications. In many cases, the use of mulches by themselves requires routine inspection and re-application. See EC-3 Hydraulic Mulch, EC-6 Straw Mulch, EC-8 Wood Mulch, or EC-14 Compost Blankets for more information.

**Geotextiles and Mats** can be used as a temporary stand-alone soil stabilization method. Depending on material selection, geotextiles and mats can be a short-term (3 mos – 1 year) or long-term (1-2 years) temporary stabilization method. For more information on geotextiles and mats see EC-7 Geotextiles and Mats.

**Rock Slope Protection** can be used when the slopes are subject to scour or have a high erosion potential, such as slopes adjacent to flowing waterways or slopes subject to overflow from detention facilities (spillways).

**Soil Binders** can be used for temporary stabilization of stockpiles and disturbed areas not subject to heavy traffic. See EC-5 Soil Binders for more information.

## Limitations

### General

- Refer to EC-3, EC-6, EC-8, and EC-14 for limitations on use of mulches. Refer to EC-7 for limitations on use of geotextiles and mats. Refer to EC-5 for limitations on use of Soil Binders.

## ***Decomposed Granite***

- Not available in some geographic regions.
- If not tackified, material may be susceptible to erosion even on slight slopes (e.g., 30:1 [H:V]).
- Installed costs may be more expensive than vegetative stabilization methods.

## ***Gravel Mulch***

- Availability is limited in some geographic regions.
- If not properly screened and washed, can contain fine material that can erode and/or create dust problems.
- If inadequately sized, material may be susceptible to erosion on sloped areas.
- Pore spaces fill with dirt and debris over time; may provide a growing medium for weeds.

## ***Rock Slope Protection***

- Installation is labor intensive.
- Installed costs can be significantly higher than vegetative stabilization methods.
- Rounded stones may not be used on slopes greater than 2:1 [H:V].

## **Implementation**

### ***General***

Non-vegetated stabilization should be used in accordance with the following general guidance:

- Should be used in conjunction with other BMPs, including drainage, erosion controls and sediment controls.
- Refer to EC-3, EC-6, EC-8, and EC-14 for implementation details for mulches. Refer to EC-7 for implementation details for geotextiles and mats. Refer to EC-5 for implementation details for soil binders.
- Non-vegetated stabilization measures should be implemented as soon as the disturbance in the areas they are intended to protect has ceased.
- Additional guidance on the comparison and selection of temporary slope stabilization methods is provided in Appendix F of the Handbook.

### ***Decomposed Granite Stabilization***

- If used for a road or path should be installed on a prepared base.
- Should be mixed with a stabilizer if used for roads or pathways, or on slope applications.
- Though porous it is recommended to prevent standing water on or next to a decomposed granite road or pathway.

## ***Gravel Mulch***

- Should be sized based on slope, rainfall, and upgradient run-on conditions. Stone size should be increased as potential for erosion increases (steeper slopes, high intensity rainfall).
- If permanent, a weed control fabric should be placed prior to installation.
- Should be installed at a minimum 2" depth.
- Should completely cover all exposed surfaces.

## ***Rock Slope Protection***

- Rock slope protection installation should follow Caltrans Standard Specification 72-2: Rock Slope Protection. Refer to the specification for rock conformity requirements and installation methods.
- When using rock slope protection, rock size and installation method should be specified by an Engineer.
- A geotextile fabric should be placed prior to installation.

## **Costs**

- Costs are highly variable depending not only on technique chosen, but also on materials chosen within specific techniques. In addition, availability of certain materials will vary by region/location, which will also affect the cost. Costs of mulches, geotextiles and mats, and soil binders are presented in their respective fact sheets. Costs for decomposed granite, gravel mulch stabilization and rock slope protection may be higher depending on location and availability of materials. Caltrans has provided an estimate for gravel mulch of \$13 - \$20/yd<sup>2</sup> in flat areas and \$14 - \$30/yd<sup>2</sup> on side slopes (adjusted for inflation, 2016 dollars).

## **Inspection and Maintenance**

### ***General***

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- For permanent installation, require inspection periodically and after major storm events to look for signs of erosion or damage to the stabilization.
- All damage should be repaired immediately.
- Refer to EC-3, EC-6, EC-8, and EC-14 for inspection and maintenance requirements for mulches. Refer to EC-7 for inspection and maintenance requirements for geotextiles and mats. Refer to EC-5 for inspection and maintenance requirements for soil binders.

### ***Decomposed Granite and Gravel Mulch Stabilization***

- Rake out and add decomposed granite or gravel as needed to areas subject to rill erosion. Inspect upgradient drainage controls and repair/modify as necessary.

- Should remain stable under loose surface material. Any significant problem areas should be repaired to restore uniformity to the installation.

## References

Arid Zone Forestry: A Guide for Field Technicians. Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 1989.

Design of Roadside Channels with Flexible Linings, Hydraulic Engineering Circular Number 15, Third Edition, Federal Highway Administration, 2007.

Design Standards for Urban Infrastructure - Soft Landscape Design, Department of Territory and Municipal Services - Australian Capital Territory [http://www.tams.act.gov.au/work/standards\\_and\\_procedures/design\\_standards\\_for\\_urban\\_infrastructure](http://www.tams.act.gov.au/work/standards_and_procedures/design_standards_for_urban_infrastructure)

Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook: A Guide for Protection of State Waters through the use of Best Management Practices during Land Disturbing Activities, Tennessee Department of Environment and Conservation, 2002.

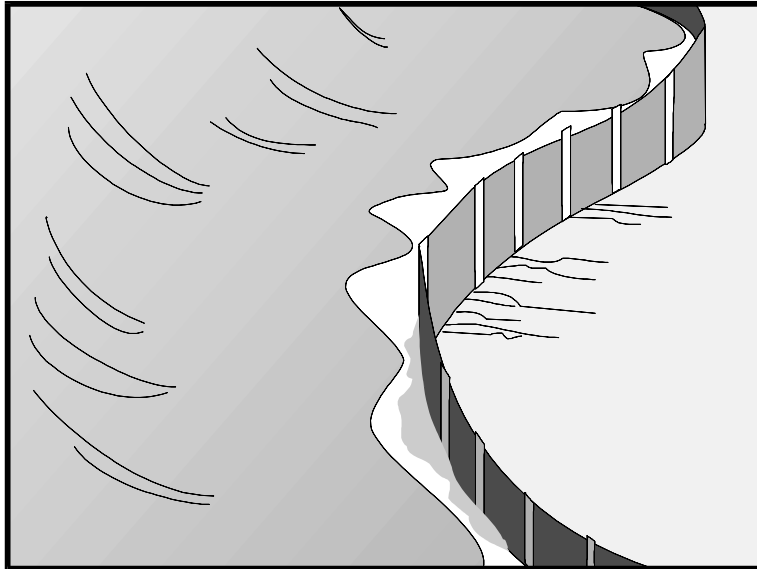
Gravel Mulch, Landscape Architecture Non-Standard Specification 10-2, California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), <http://www.dot.ca.gov/hq/LandArch/roadside/detail-gm.htm>

Maine Erosion and Sediment Control BMPs, DEPLW0588, Maine Department of Environmental Protection: Bureau of Land and Water Quality, 2003.

National Menu of Best Management Practices, US Environmental Protection Agency, 2006.

Standard Specification 72-2: Rock Slope Protection. California Department of Transportation, 2006.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.



## Description and Purpose

A silt fence is made of a woven geotextile that has been entrenched, attached to supporting poles, and sometimes backed by a plastic or wire mesh for support. The silt fence detains water, promoting sedimentation of coarse sediment behind the fence. Silt fence does not retain soil fine particles like clays or silts.

## Suitable Applications

Silt fences are suitable for perimeter control, placed below areas where sheet flows discharge from the site. They could also be used as interior controls below disturbed areas where runoff may occur in the form of sheet and rill erosion and around inlets within disturbed areas (Storm Drain Inlet Protection, SE-10). Silt fences should not be used in locations where the flow is concentrated. Silt fences should always be used in combination with erosion controls. Suitable applications include:

- At perimeter of a project (although they should not be installed up and down slopes).
- Below the toe or down slope of exposed and erodible slopes.
- Along streams and channels.
- Around temporary spoil areas and stockpiles.
- Around inlets.
- Below other small cleared areas.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment (coarse sediment)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- SE-5 Fiber Rolls
- SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls
- SE-13 Compost Socks and Berms
- SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



## Limitations

- Do not use in streams, channels, drain inlets, or anywhere flow is concentrated.
- Do not use in locations where ponded water may cause a flooding hazard.
- Do not use silt fence to divert water flows or place across any contour line.
- Improperly installed fences are subject to failure from undercutting, overtopping, or collapsing.
- Must be trenched and keyed in.
- According to the State Water Board's *CGP Review, Issue #2* (2014), silt fences reinforced with metal or plastic mesh should be avoided due to plastic pollution and wildlife concerns.
- Not intended for use as a substitute for Fiber Rolls (SE-5), when fiber rolls are being used as a slope interruption device.
- Do not use on slopes subject to creeping, slumping, or landslides.

## Implementation

### General

A silt fence is a temporary sediment barrier consisting of woven geotextile stretched across and attached to supporting posts, trenched-in, and, depending upon the strength of fabric used, supported with plastic or wire mesh fence. Silt fences trap coarse sediment by intercepting and detaining sediment-laden runoff from disturbed areas in order to promote sedimentation behind the fence.

The following layout and installation guidance can improve performance and should be followed:

- Silt fence should be used in combination with erosion controls up-slope in order to provide the most effective sediment control.
- Silt fence alone is not effective at reducing turbidity. (Barrett and Malina, 2004)
- Designers should consider diverting sediment laden water to a temporary sediment basin or trap. (EPA, 2012)
- Use principally in areas where sheet flow occurs.
- Install along a level contour, so water does not pond more than 1.5 ft. at any point along the silt fence.
- Provide sufficient room for runoff to pond behind the fence and to allow sediment removal equipment to pass between the silt fence and toes of slopes or other obstructions. About 1200 ft.<sup>2</sup> of ponding area should be provided for every acre draining to the fence.
- Efficiency of silt fences is primarily dependent on the detention time of the runoff behind the control. (Barrett and Malina, 2004)

- The drainage area above any fence should not exceed a quarter of an acre. (Rule of Thumb- 100-feet of silt fence per 10,000 ft.<sup>2</sup> of disturbed area.) (EPA, 2012)
- The maximum length of slope draining to any point along the silt fence should be 100 ft. per ft of silt fence.
- Turn the ends of the filter fence uphill to prevent stormwater from flowing around the fence.
- Leave an undisturbed or stabilized area immediately down slope from the fence where feasible.
- Silt fences should remain in place until the disturbed area draining to the silt fence is permanently stabilized, after which, the silt fence fabric and posts should be removed and properly disposed.
- J-hooks, which have ends turning up the slope to break up long runs of fence and provide multiple storage areas that work like mini-retention areas, may be used to increase the effectiveness of silt fence.
- Be aware of local regulations regarding the type and installation requirements of silt fence, which may differ from those presented in this fact sheet.

## ***Design and Layout***

In areas where high winds are anticipated the fence should be supported by a plastic or wire mesh. The geotextile fabric of the silt fence should contain ultraviolet inhibitors and stabilizers to provide longevity equivalent to the project life or replacement schedule.

- Layout in accordance with the attached figures.
- For slopes that contain a high number of rocks or large dirt clods that tend to dislodge, it may be necessary to protect silt fence from rocks (e.g., rockfall netting) ensure the integrity of the silt fence installation.

## ***Standard vs. Heavy Duty Silt Fence***

### *Standard Silt Fence*

- Generally applicable in cases where the area draining to fence produces moderate sediment loads.

### *Heavy Duty Silt Fence*

- Heavy duty silt fence usually has 1 or more of the following characteristics, not possessed by standard silt fence.
  - Fabric is reinforced with wire backing or additional support.
  - Posts are spaced closer than pre-manufactured, standard silt fence products.
- Use is generally limited to areas affected by high winds.
- Area draining to fence produces moderate sediment loads.

## ***Materials***

### *Standard Silt Fence*

- Silt fence material should be woven geotextile with a minimum width of 36 in. The fabric should conform to the requirements in ASTM designation D6461.



- Wooden stakes should be commercial quality lumber of the size and shape shown on the plans. Each stake should be free from decay, splits or cracks longer than the thickness of the stake or other defects that would weaken the stakes and cause the stakes to be structurally unsuitable.
- Staples used to fasten the fence fabric to the stakes should be not less than 1.75 in. long and should be fabricated from 15-gauge or heavier wire. The wire used to fasten the tops of the stakes together when joining two sections of fence should be 9 gauge or heavier wire. Galvanizing of the fastening wire will not be required.

### *Heavy-Duty Silt Fence*

- Some silt fence has a wire backing to provide additional support, and there are products that may use prefabricated plastic holders for the silt fence and use metal posts instead of wood stakes.

### **Installation Guidelines – Traditional Method**

Silt fences are to be constructed on a level contour. Sufficient area should exist behind the fence for ponding to occur without flooding or overtopping the fence.

- A trench should be excavated approximately 6 in. wide and 6 in. deep along the line of the proposed silt fence (trenches should not be excavated wider or deeper than necessary for proper silt fence installation).
- Bottom of the silt fence should be keyed-in a minimum of 12 in.
- Posts should be spaced a maximum of 6 ft. apart and driven securely into the ground a minimum of 18 in. or 12 in. below the bottom of the trench.
- When standard strength geotextile is used, a plastic or wire mesh support fence should be fastened securely to the upslope side of posts using heavy-duty wire staples at least 1 in. long. The mesh should extend into the trench.
- When extra-strength geotextile and closer post spacing are used, the mesh support fence may be eliminated.
- Woven geotextile should be purchased in a long roll, then cut to the length of the barrier. When joints are necessary, geotextile should be spliced together only at a support post, with a minimum 6 in. overlap and both ends securely fastened to the post.
- The trench should be backfilled with native material and compacted.
- Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed  $\frac{1}{3}$  the height of the barrier; in no case should the reach exceed 500 ft.
- Cross barriers should be a minimum of  $\frac{1}{3}$  and a maximum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  the height of the linear barrier.
- See typical installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

## ***Installation Guidelines - Static Slicing Method***

- Static Slicing is defined as insertion of a narrow blade pulled behind a tractor, similar to a plow blade, at least 10 in. into the soil while at the same time pulling silt geotextile fabric into the ground through the opening created by the blade to the depth of the blade. Once the geotextile is installed, the soil is compacted using tractor tires.
- This method will not work with pre-fabricated, wire backed silt fence.
- Benefits:
  - Ease of installation (most often done with a 2-person crew).
  - Minimal soil disturbance.
  - Better level of compaction along fence, less susceptible to undercutting
  - Uniform installation.
- Limitations:
  - Does not work in shallow or rocky soils.
  - Complete removal of geotextile material after use is difficult.
  - Be cautious when digging near potential underground utilities.

## **Costs**

- It should be noted that costs vary greatly across regions due to available supplies and labor costs.
- Average annual cost for installation using the traditional silt fence installation method (assumes 6 month useful life) is \$7 per linear foot based on vendor research. Range of cost is \$3.50 - \$9.10 per linear foot.

## **Inspection and Maintenance**

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Repair undercut silt fences.
- Repair or replace split, torn, slumping, or weathered fabric. The lifespan of silt fence fabric is generally 5 to 8 months.
- Silt fences that are damaged and become unsuitable for the intended purpose should be removed from the site of work, disposed, and replaced with new silt fence barriers.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches 1/3 of the barrier height.

- Silt fences should be left in place until the upgradient area is permanently stabilized. Until then, the silt fence should be inspected and maintained regularly.
- Remove silt fence when upgradient areas are stabilized. Fill and compact post holes and anchor trench, remove sediment accumulation, grade fence alignment to blend with adjacent ground, and stabilize disturbed area.

## References

CGP Review #2, State Water Resources Control Board, 2014. Available online at: [http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/stormwater/docs/training/cgp\\_review\\_issue2.pdf](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/docs/training/cgp_review_issue2.pdf).

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

Monitoring Data on Effectiveness of Sediment Control Techniques, Proceedings of World Water and Environmental Resources Congress, Barrett M. and Malina J. 2004.

National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, Work Group-Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Sedimentation and Erosion Control Practices, and Inventory of Current Practices (Draft), USEPA, 1990.

Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission (SWRPC). Costs of Urban Nonpoint Source Water Pollution Control Measures. Technical Report No. 31. Southeastern Wisconsin Regional Planning Commission, Waukesha, WI. 1991.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Management Manual for The Puget Sound Basin, Washington State Department of Ecology, Public Review Draft, 1991.

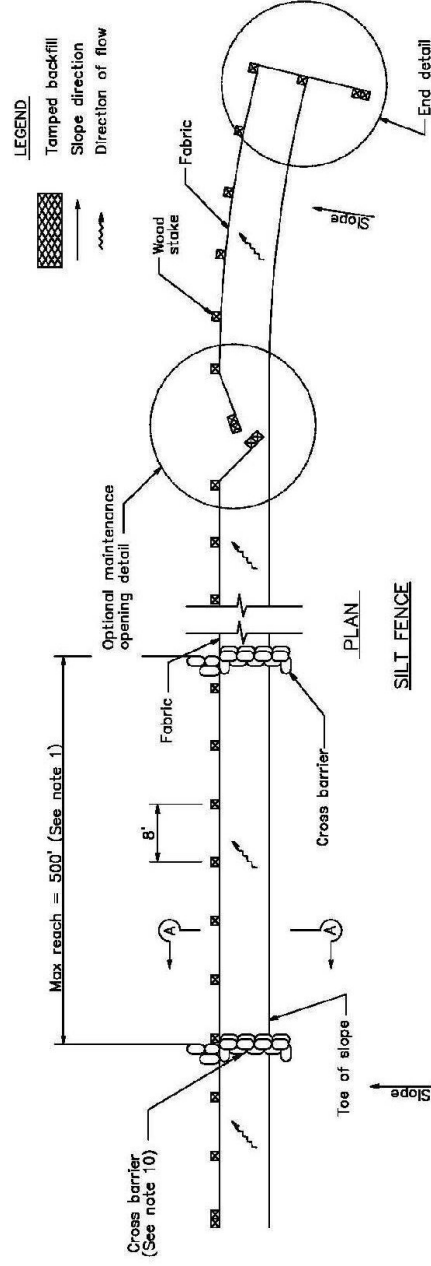
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Stormwater Best Management Practices: Silt Fences. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 2012.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Stormwater Management for Industrial Activities: Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1992.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

Soil Stabilization BMP Research for Erosion and Sediment Controls: Cost Survey Technical Memorandum, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2007.

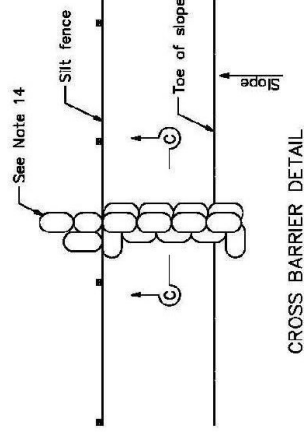
Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.



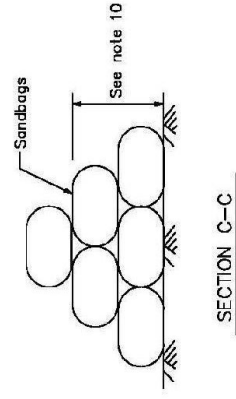
SILT FENCE

## NOTES

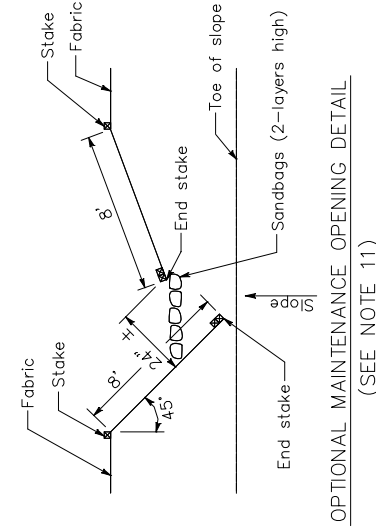
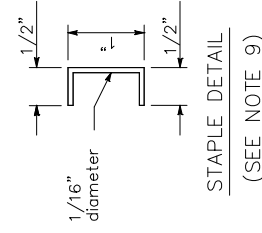
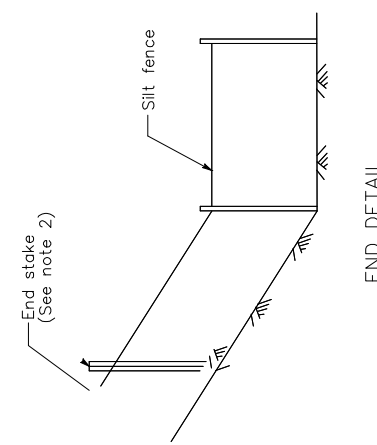
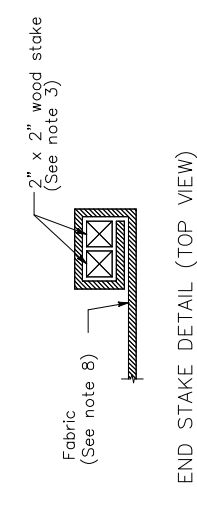
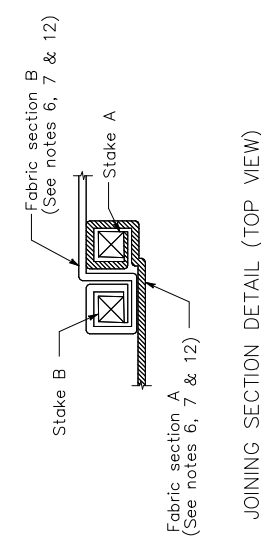
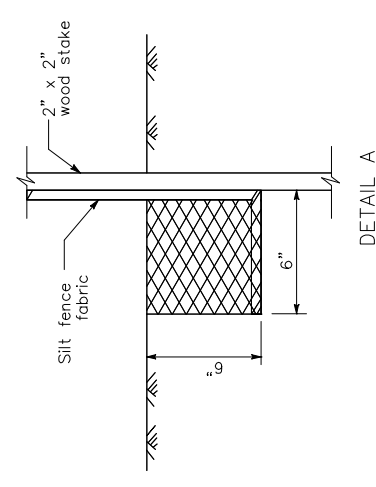
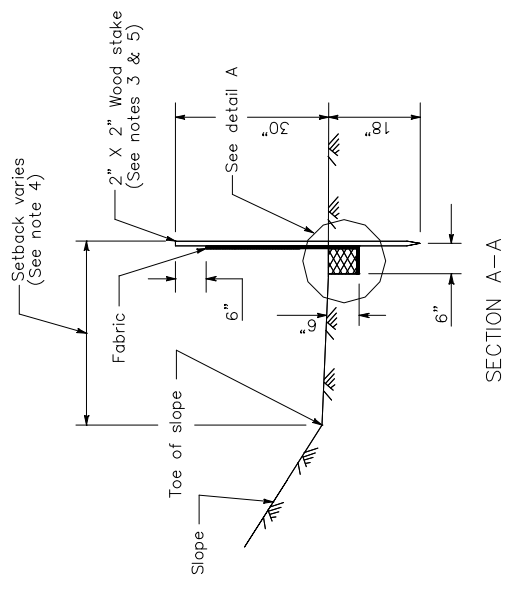
1. Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed  $1/3$  the height of the linear barrier. In no case shall the reach length exceed 500'.
2. The last 8'-0" of fence shall be turned up slope.
3. Stake dimensions are nominal.
4. Dimension may vary to fit field condition.
5. Stakes shall be spaced at 8'-0" maximum and shall be positioned on downstream side of fence.
6. Stakes to overlap and fence fabric to fold around each stake one full turn. Secure fabric to stake with 4 staples.
7. Stakes shall be driven tightly together to prevent potential flow-through of sediment at joint. The tops of the stakes shall be secured with wire.
8. For end stake, fence fabric shall be folded around two stakes are full turn and secured with 4 staples.
9. Minimum 4 staples per stake. Dimensions shown are typical.
10. Cross barriers shall be a minimum of  $1/3$  and a maximum of  $1/2$  the height of the linear barrier.
11. Maintenance openings shall be constructed in a manner to ensure sediment remains behind silt fence.
12. Joining sections shall not be placed at sump locations.
13. Sandbag rows and layers shall be offset to eliminate gaps.
14. Add 3-4 bags to cross barrier on downgradient side of silt fence as needed to prevent bypass or undermining and as allowable based on site limits of disturbance.

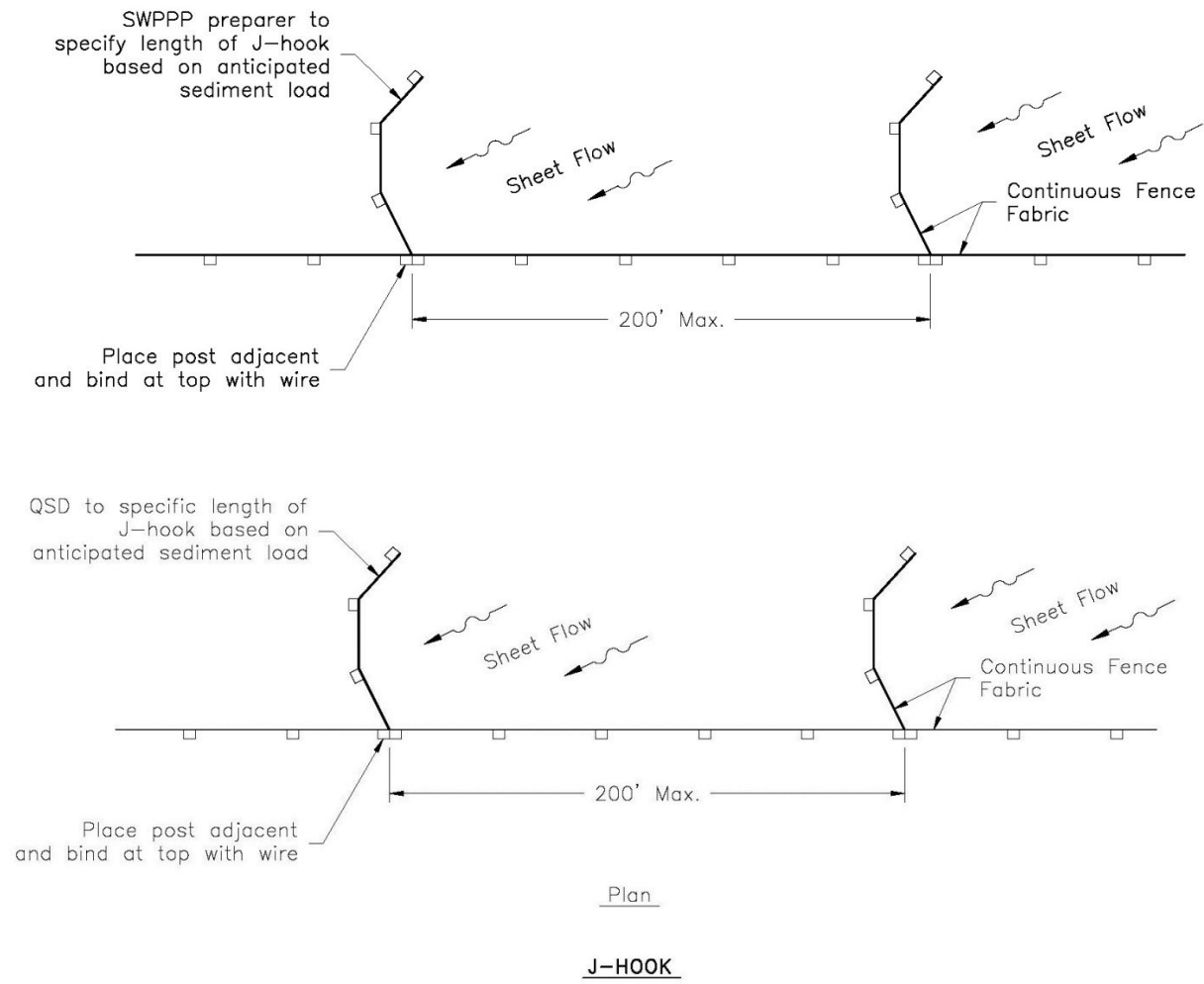


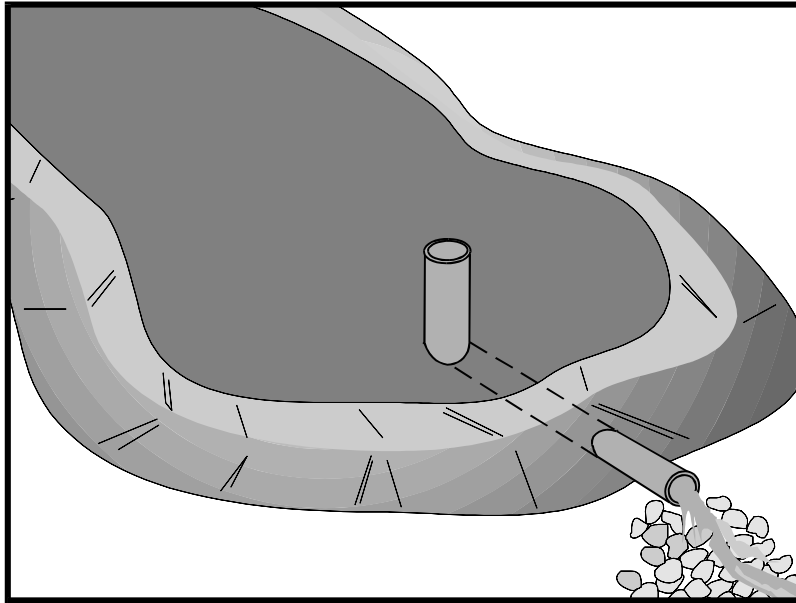
CROSS BARRIER DETAIL



SECTION C-C







## Description and Purpose

A sediment basin is a temporary basin formed by excavation or by constructing an embankment so that sediment-laden runoff is temporarily detained under quiescent conditions, allowing sediment to settle out before the runoff is released.

Sediment basin design guidance presented in this fact sheet is intended to provide options, methods, and techniques to optimize temporary sediment basin performance and basin sediment removal. Basin design guidance provided in this fact sheet is not intended to guarantee basin effluent compliance with numeric discharge limits (numeric action levels or numeric effluent limits for turbidity). Compliance with discharge limits requires a thoughtful approach to comprehensive BMP planning, implementation, and maintenance. Therefore, optimally designed and maintained sediment basins should be used in conjunction with a comprehensive system of BMPs that includes:

- Diverting runoff from undisturbed areas away from the basin
- Erosion control practices to minimize disturbed areas on-site and to provide temporary stabilization and interim sediment controls (e.g., stockpile perimeter control, check dams, perimeter controls around individual lots) to reduce the basin's influent sediment concentration.

At some sites, sediment basin design enhancements may be required to adequately remove sediment. Traditional

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ Primary Category
- ☒ Secondary Category

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

SE-3 Sediment Trap (for smaller areas)

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.





(a.k.a. “physical”) enhancements such as alternative outlet configurations or flow deflection baffles increase detention time and other techniques such as outlet skimmers preferentially drain flows with lower sediment concentrations. These “physical” enhancement techniques are described in this fact sheet. To further enhance sediment removal particularly at sites with fine soils or turbidity sensitive receiving waters, some projects may need to consider implementing Active Treatment Systems (ATS) whereby coagulants and flocculants are used to enhance settling and removal of suspended sediments. Guidance on implementing ATS is provided in SE-11.

## Suitable Applications

Sediment basins may be suitable for use on larger projects with sufficient space for constructing the basin. Sediment basins should be considered for use:

- Where sediment-laden water may enter the drainage system or watercourses
- On construction projects with disturbed areas during the rainy season
- At the outlet of disturbed watersheds between 5 acres and 75 acres and evaluated on a site by site basis
- Where post construction detention basins are required
- In association with dikes, temporary channels, and pipes used to convey runoff from disturbed areas

## Limitations

Sediment basins must be installed only within the property limits and where failure of the structure will not result in loss of life, damage to homes or buildings, or interruption of use or service of public roads or utilities. In addition, sediment basins are attractive to children and can be very dangerous. Local ordinances regarding health and safety must be adhered to. If fencing of the basin is required, the type of fence and its location should be shown in the SWPPP and in the construction specifications.

- As a general guideline, sediment basins are suitable for drainage areas of 5 acres or more, but not appropriate for drainage areas greater than 75 acres. However, the tributary area should be evaluated on a site by site basis.
- Sediment basins may become an “attractive nuisance” and care must be taken to adhere to all safety practices. If safety is a concern, basin may require protective fencing.
- Sediment basins designed according to this fact sheet are only effective in removing sediment down to about the silt size fraction. Sediment-laden runoff with smaller size fractions (fine silt and clay) may not be adequately treated unless chemical (or other appropriate method) treatment is used in addition to the sediment basin.
- Basins with a height of 25 ft or more or an impounding capacity of 50 ac-ft or more must obtain approval from California Department of Water Resources Division of Safety of Dams (<http://www.water.ca.gov/damsafety/>).

- Water that stands in sediment basins longer than 96 hours may become a source of mosquitoes (and midges), particularly along perimeter edges, in shallow zones, in scour or below-grade pools, around inlet pipes, along low-flow channels, and among protected habitats created by emergent or floating vegetation (e.g. cattails, water hyacinth), algal mats, riprap, etc.
- Basins require large surface areas to permit settling of sediment. Size may be limited by the available area.

## Implementation

### *General*

A sediment basin is a controlled stormwater release structure formed by excavation or by construction of an embankment of compacted soil across a drainage way, or other suitable location. It is intended to trap sediment before it leaves the construction site. The basin is a temporary measure expected to be used during active construction in most cases and is to be maintained until the site area is permanently protected against erosion or a permanent detention basin is constructed.

Sediment basins are suitable for nearly all types of construction projects. Whenever possible, construct the sediment basins before clearing and grading work begins. Basins should be located at the stormwater outlet from the site but not in any natural or undisturbed stream. A typical application would include temporary dikes, pipes, and/or channels to convey runoff to the basin inlet.

Many development projects in California are required by local ordinances to provide a stormwater detention basin for post-construction flood control, desilting, or stormwater pollution control. A temporary sediment basin may be constructed by rough grading the post-construction control basins early in the project.

Sediment basins if properly designed and maintained can trap a significant amount of the sediment that flows into them. However, traditional basins do not remove all inflowing sediment. Therefore, they should be used in conjunction with erosion control practices such as temporary seeding, mulching, diversion dikes, etc., to reduce the amount of sediment flowing into the basin.

### *Planning*

To improve the effectiveness of the basin, it should be located to intercept runoff from the largest possible amount of disturbed area. Locations best suited for a sediment basin are generally in lower elevation areas of the site (or basin tributary area) where site drainage would not require significant diversion or other means to direct water to the basin but outside jurisdictional waterways. However, as necessary, drainage into the basin can be improved by the use of earth dikes and drainage swales (see BMP EC-9). The basin should not be located where its failure would result in the loss of life or interruption of the use or service of public utilities or roads.

Construct before clearing and grading work begins when feasible.

- Do not locate the basin in a jurisdictional stream.

- Basin sites should be located where failure of the structure will not cause loss of life, damage to homes or buildings, or interruption of use or service of public roads or utilities.
- Basins with a height of 25 ft or more or an impounding capacity of 50 ac-ft must obtain approval from the Division of Dam Safety. Local dam safety requirements may be more stringent.
- Limit the contributing area to the sediment basin to only the runoff from the disturbed soil areas. Use temporary concentrated flow conveyance controls to divert runoff from undisturbed areas away from the sediment basin.
- The basin should be located: (1) by excavating a suitable area or where a low embankment can be constructed across a swale, (2) where post-construction (permanent) detention basins will be constructed, and (3) where the basins can be maintained on a year-round basis to provide access for maintenance, including sediment removal and sediment stockpiling in a protected area, and to maintain the basin to provide the required capacity.

## Design

When designing a sediment basin, designers should evaluate the site constraints that could affect the efficiency of the BMP. Some of these constraints include: the relationship between basin capacity, anticipated sediment load, and freeboard, available footprint for the basin, maintenance frequency and access, and hydraulic capacity and efficiency of the temporary outlet infrastructure. Sediment basins should be designed to maximize sediment removal and to consider sediment load retained by the basin as it affects basin performance.

Three Basin Design Options (Part A) are presented below along with a Typical Sediment/Detention Basin Design Methodology (Part B). Regardless of the design option that is selected, designers also need to evaluate the sediment basin capacity with respect to sediment accumulation (See “*Step 3. Evaluate the Capacity of the Sediment Basin*”) and should incorporate approaches identified in “*Step 4. Other Design Considerations*” to enhance basin performance.

### A) Basin Design Options:

#### Option 1:

Design sediment basin(s) using the standard equation:

$$A_s = \frac{1.2Q}{V_s} \quad (\text{Eq. 1})$$

Where:

$A_s$  = Minimum surface area for trapping soil particles of a certain size

$V_s$  = Settling velocity of the design particle size chosen ( $V_s = 0.00028$  ft/s for a design particle size of 0.01 mm at 68°F)

1.2 = Factor of safety recommended by USEPA to account for the reduction in basin efficiency caused due to turbulence and other non ideal conditions.

$$Q = CIA \quad (\text{Eq.2})$$

Where

Q = Peak basin influent flow rate measured in cubic feet per second (ft<sup>3</sup>/s)

C = Runoff coefficient (unitless)

I = Peak rainfall intensity for the 10-year, 6-hour rain event (in/hr)

A = Area draining into the sediment basin in acres

The design particle size should be the smallest soil grain size determined by wet sieve analysis, or the fine silt sized (0.01 mm [or 0.0004 in.]) particle, and the Vs used should be 100 percent of the calculated settling velocity.

This sizing basin method is dependent on the outlet structure design or the total basin length with an appropriate outlet. If the designer chooses to utilize the outlet structure to control the flow duration in the basin, the basin length (distance between the inlet and the outlet) should be a minimum of twice the basin width; the depth should not be less than 3 ft nor greater than 5 ft for safety reasons and for maximum efficiency (2 ft of sediment storage, 2 ft of capacity). If the designer chooses to utilize the basin length (with appropriate basin outlet) to control the flow duration in the basin, the basin length (distance between the inlet and the outlet) should be a specifically designed to capture 100% of the design particle size; the depth should not be less than 3 ft nor greater than 5 ft for safety reasons and for maximum efficiency (2 ft of sediment storage, 2 ft of capacity).

Basin design guidance provided herein assumes standard water properties (e.g., estimated average water temperature, kinematic viscosity, etc.) as a basis of the design. Designers can use an alternative design (Option 3) with site specific water properties as long as the design is as protective as Option 1.

The design guidance uses the peak influent flow rate to size sediment basins. Designers can use an alternative design (Option 3) with site specific average flow rates as long as the design is as protective as Option 1.

The basin should be located on the site where it can be maintained on a year-round basis and should be maintained on a schedule to retain the 2 ft of capacity.

## **Option 2:**

Design pursuant to local ordinance for sediment basin design and maintenance, provided that the design efficiency is as protective or more protective of water quality than Option 1.

## **Option 3:**

The use of an equivalent surface area design or equation provided that the design efficiency is as protective or more protective of water quality than Option 1.

## ***B) Typical Sediment/Detention Basin Design Methodology:***

Design of a sediment basin requires the designer to have an understanding of the site constraints, knowledge of the local soil (e.g., particle size distribution of potentially contributing soils), drainage area of the basin, and local hydrology. Designers should not assume that a sediment basin for location A is applicable to location B. Therefore, designers can use this factsheet as guidance but will need to apply professional judgment and knowledge of the site to design an effective and efficient sediment basin. The following provides a general overview of typical design methodologies:

### *Step 1. Hydrologic Design*

- Evaluate the site constraints and assess the drainage area for the sediment basin. Designers should consider on- and off-site flows as well as changes in the drainage area associated with site construction/disturbance. To minimize additional construction during the course of the project, the designer should consider identifying the maximum drainage area when calculating the basin dimensions.
- If a local hydrology manual is not available, it is recommended to follow standard rational method procedures to estimate the flow rate. The references section of this factsheet provides a reference to standard hydrology textbooks that can provide standard methodologies. If local rainfall depths are not available, values can be obtained from standard precipitation frequency maps from NOAA (downloaded from <http://www.wrcc.dri.edu/pcpnfreq.html>).

### *Step 2. Hydraulic Design*

- Calculate the surface area required for the sediment basin using Equation 1. In which the flow rate is estimated for a 10-yr 6-hr event using rational method procedure listed in local hydrology manual and  $V_s$  is estimated using Stokes Law presented in Equation 3.

$$V_s = 2.81d^2 \quad (\text{Eq.3})$$

Where

$V_s$  = Settling velocity in feet per second at 68°F

$d$  = diameter of sediment particle in millimeters (smallest soil grain size determined by wet sieve analysis or fine silt (0.01 mm [or 0.0004 in.]])

- In general, the basin outlet design requires an iterative trial and error approach that considered the maximum water surface elevation, the elevation versus volume (stage-storage) relationship, the elevation versus basin outflow (a.k.a.-discharge) relationship, and the estimated inflow hydrograph. To adequately design the basins to settle sediment, the outlet configuration and associated outflow rates can be estimated by numerous methodologies. The following provides some guidance for design the basin outlet:
  - An outlet should have more than one orifice.
  - An outlet design typically utilizes multiple horizontal rows of orifices (approximately 3 or more) with at least 2 orifices per row (see Figures 1 and 2 at the end of this fact sheet).

- Orifices can vary in shape.
- Select the appropriate orifice diameter and number of perforations per row with the objective of minimizing the number of rows while maximizing the detention time.
- The diameter of each orifice is typically a maximum of 3-4 inches and a minimum of 0.25-0.5 inches.
- If a rectangular orifice is used, it is recommended to have minimum height of 0.5 inches and a maximum height of 6 inches.
- Rows are typically spaced at three times the diameter center to center vertically with a minimum distance of approximately 4 inches on center and a maximum distance of 1 foot on center.
- To estimate the outflow rate, each row is calculated separately based on the flow through a single orifice then multiplied by the number of orifices in the row. This step is repeated for each of the rows. Once all of the orifices are estimated, the total outflow rate versus elevation (stage-discharge curve) is developed to evaluate the detention time within the basin.
- Flow through a single orifice can be estimated using an Equation 4:

$$Q = BC' A(2gH)^{0.5} \quad (\text{Eq.4})$$

Where

Q = Outflow rate in ft<sup>3</sup>/s

C' = Orifice coefficient (unitless)

A = Area of the orifice (ft<sup>2</sup>)

g = acceleration due to gravity (ft<sup>3</sup>/s)

H = Head above the orifice (ft)

B = Anticipated Blockage or clogging factor (unitless), It is dependent on anticipated sediment and debris load, trash rack configuration etc, so the value is dependent on design engineer's professional judgment and/or local requirements (B is never greater than 1 and a value of 0.5 is generally used)

- Care must be taken in the selection of orifice coefficient ("C'"); 0.60 is most often recommended and used. However, based on actual tests, Young and Graziano (1989), "Outlet Hydraulics of Extended Detention Facilities for Northern Virginia Planning District Commission", recommends the following:
  - C' = 0.66 for thin materials; where the thickness is equal to or less than the orifice diameter, or
  - C' = 0.80 when the material is thicker than the orifice diameter
- If different sizes of orifices are used along the riser then they have to be sized such that not more than 50 percent of the design storm event drains in one-third of the drawdown time (to provide adequate settling time for events smaller than the design storm event)

and the entire volume drains within 96 hours or as regulated by the local vector control agency. If a basin fails to drain within 96 hours, the basin must be pumped dry.

- Because basins are not maintained for infiltration, water loss by infiltration should be disregarded when designing the hydraulic capacity of the outlet structure.
- Floating Outlet Skimmer: The floating skimmer (see Figure 3 at the end of this fact sheet is an alternative outlet configuration (patented) that drains water from upper portion of the water column. This configuration has been used for temporary and permanent basins and can improve basin performance by eliminating bottom orifices which have the potential of discharging solids. Some design considerations for this alternative outlet device includes the addition of a sand filter or perforated under drain at the low point in the basin and near the floating skimmer. These secondary drains allow the basin to fully drain. More detailed guidelines for sizing the skimmer can be downloaded from <http://www.fairclothskimmer.com/>.
- Hold and Release Valve: An ideal sediment/detention basin would hold all flows to the design storm level for sufficient time to settle solids, and then slowly release the storm water. Implementing a reliable valve system for releasing detention basins is critical to eliminate the potential for flooding in such a system. Some variations of hold and release valves include manual valves, bladder devices or electrically operated valves. When a precipitation event is forecast, the valve would be close for the duration of the storm and appropriate settling time. When the settling duration is met (approximately 24 or 48 hours), the valve would be opened and allow the stormwater to be released at a rate that does not resuspend settled solids and in a non-erosive manner. If this type of system is used the valve should be designed to empty the entire basin within 96 hours or as stipulated by local vector control regulations.

### *Step 3. Evaluate the Capacity of the Sediment Basin*

- Typically, sediment basins do not perform as designed when they are not properly maintained or the sediment yield to the basin is larger than expected. As part of a good sediment basin design, designers should consider maintenance cycles, estimated soil loss and/or sediment yield, and basin sediment storage volume. The two equations below can be used to quantify the amount of soil entering the basin.
- The Revised Universal Soil Loss Equation (RUSLE, Eq.5) can be used to estimate annual soil loss and the Modified Universal Soil Equation (MUSLE, Eq.6) can be used to estimate sediment yield from a single storm event.

$$A = R \times K \times LS \times C \times P \quad (\text{Eq.5})$$

$$Y = 95(Q \times q_p)^{0.56} \times K \times LS \times C \times P \quad (\text{Eq.6})$$

Where:

A = annual soil loss, tons/acre-year

R = rainfall erosion index, in 100 ft. Tons/acre.in/hr.

K = soil erodibility factor, tons/acre per unit of R

LS = slope length and steepness factor (unitless)

C = vegetative cover factor (unitless)

P = erosion control practice factor (unitless)

Y = single storm sediment yield in tons

Q = runoff volume in acre-feet

$q_p$  = peak flow in cfs

- Detailed descriptions and methodologies for estimating the soil loss can be obtained from standard hydrology text books (See References section).
- Determination of the appropriate equation should consider construction duration and local environmental factors (soils, hydrology, etc.). For example, if a basin is planned for a project duration of 1 year and the designer specifies one maintenance cycle, RUSLE could be used to estimate the soil loss and thereby the designer could indicate that the sediment storage volume would be half of the soil loss value estimated. As an example, for use of MUSLE, a project may have a short construction duration thereby requiring fewer maintenance cycles and a reduced sediment storage volume. MUSLE would be used to estimate the anticipated soil loss based on a specific storm event to evaluate the sediment storage volume and appropriate maintenance frequency.
- The soil loss estimates are an essential step in the design, and it is essential that the designer provide construction contractors with enough information to understand maintenance frequency and/or depths within the basin that would trigger maintenance. Providing maintenance methods, frequency and specification should be included in design bid documents such as the SWPPP Site Map.
- Once the designer has quantified the amount of soil entering the basin, the depth required for sediment storage can be determined by dividing the estimated sediment loss by the surface area of the basin.

## *Step 4. Other Design Considerations*

- Consider designing the volume of the settling zone for the total storm volume associated with the 2-year event or other appropriate design storms specified by the local agency. This volume can be used as a guide for sizing the basin without iterative routing calculations. The depth of the settling zone can be estimated by dividing the estimated 2-yr storm volume by the surface area of the basin.
- The basin volume consists of two zones:
  - A sediment storage zone at least 1 ft deep.
  - A settling zone at least 2 ft deep.



- The basin depth must be no less than 3 ft (not including freeboard).
- Proper hydraulic design of the outlet is critical to achieving the desired performance of the basin. The outlet should be designed to drain the basin within 24 to 96 hours (also referred to as “drawdown time”). The 24-hour limit is specified to provide adequate settling time; the 96-hour limit is specified to mitigate vector control concerns.
- Confirmation of the basin performance can be evaluated by routing the design storm (10-yr 6-hr, or as directed by local regulations) through the basin based on the basin volume (stage-storage curve) and the outlet design (stage-discharge curve based on the orifice configuration or equivalent outlet design).
- Sediment basins, regardless of size and storage volume, should include features to accommodate overflow or bypass flows that exceed the design storm event.
  - Include an emergency spillway to accommodate flows not carried by the principal spillway. The spillway should consist of an open channel (earthen or vegetated) over undisturbed material (not fill) or constructed of a non-erodible riprap (or equivalent protection) on fill slopes.
  - The spillway control section, which is a level portion of the spillway channel at the highest elevation in the channel, should be a minimum of 20 ft in length.
- Rock, vegetation or appropriate erosion control should be used to protect the basin inlet, outlet, and slopes against erosion.
- The total depth of the sediment basin should include the depth required for sediment storage, depth required for settling zone and freeboard of at least 1 foot or as regulated by local flood control agency for a flood event specified by the local agency.
- The basin alignment should be designed such that the length of the basin is more than twice the width of the basin; the length should be determined by measuring the distance between the inlet and the outlet. If the site topography does not allow for this configuration baffles should be installed so that the ratio is satisfied. If a basin has more than one inflow point, any inflow point that conveys more than 30 percent of the total peak inflow rate has to meet the required length to width ratio.
- An alternative basin sizing method proposed by Fifield (2004) can be consulted to estimate an alternative length to width ratio and basin configuration. These methods can be considered as part of Option 3 which allows for alternative designs that are protective or more protective of water quality.
- Baffles (see Figure 4 at the end of this fact sheet) can be considered at project sites where the existing topography or site constraints limit the length to width ratio. Baffles should be constructed of earthen berms or other structural material within the basin to divert flow in the basin, thus increasing the effective flow length from the basin inlet to the outlet riser. Baffles also reduce the change of short circuiting and allows for settling throughout the basin.

- Baffles are typically constructed from the invert of the basin to the crest of the emergency spillway (i.e., design event flows are meant to flow around the baffles and flows greater than the design event would flow over the baffles to the emergency spillway).
- Use of other materials for construction of basin baffles (such as silt fence) may not be appropriate based on the material specifications and will require frequent maintenance (maintain after every storm event). Maintenance may not be feasible when required due to flooded conditions resulting from frequent (i.e., back to back) storm events. Use of alternative baffle materials should not deviate from the intended purpose of the material, as described by the manufacturer.
- Sediment basins are best used in conjunction with erosion controls.
- Basins with an impounding levee greater than 4.5 ft tall, measured from the lowest point to the impounding area to the highest point of the levee, and basins capable of impounding more than 35,000 ft<sup>3</sup>, should be designed by a Registered Civil Engineer. The design should include maintenance requirements, including sediment and vegetation removal, to ensure continuous function of the basin outlet and bypass structures.
- A forebay, constructed upstream of the basin, may be provided to remove debris and larger particles.
- The outflow from the sediment basin should be provided with velocity dissipation devices (see BMP EC-10) to prevent erosion and scouring of the embankment and channel.
- The principal outlet should consist of a corrugated metal, high density polyethylene (HDPE), or reinforced concrete riser pipe with dewatering holes and an anti-vortex device and trash rack attached to the top of the riser, to prevent floating debris from flowing out of the basin or obstructing the system. This principal structure should be designed to accommodate the inflow design storm.
- A rock pile or rock-filled gabions can serve as alternatives to the debris screen, although the designer should be aware of the potential for extra maintenance involved should the pore spaces in the rock pile clog.
- The outlet structure should be placed on a firm, smooth foundation with the base securely anchored with concrete or other means to prevent floatation.
- Attach riser pipe (watertight connection) to a horizontal pipe (barrel). Provide anti-seep collars on the barrel.
- Cleanout level should be clearly marked on the riser pipe.

## ***Installation***

- Securely anchor and install an anti-seep collar on the outlet pipe/riser and provide an emergency spillway for passing major floods (see local flood control agency).
- Areas under embankments must be cleared and stripped of vegetation.

- Chain link fencing should be provided around each sediment basin to prevent unauthorized entry to the basin or if safety is a concern.

## Costs

The cost of a sediment basin is highly variable and is dependent of the site configuration. To decrease basin construction costs, designers should consider using existing site features such as berms or depressed area to site the sediment basin. Designers should also consider potential savings associated with designing the basin to minimize the number of maintenance cycles and siting the basin in a location where a permanent BMP (e.g., extended detention basin) is required for the project site.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level and as required by local requirements. It is recommended that at a minimum, basins be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Examine basin banks for seepage and structural soundness.
- Check inlet and outlet structures and spillway for any damage or obstructions. Repair damage and remove obstructions as needed.
- Check inlet and outlet area for erosion and stabilize if required.
- Check fencing for damage and repair as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates in the basin must be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when sediment accumulation reaches one-half the designated sediment storage volume. Sediment removed during maintenance should be managed properly. The sediment should be appropriately evaluated and used or disposed of accordingly. Options include: incorporating sediment into earthwork on the site (only if there is no risk that sediment is contaminated); or off-site export/disposal at an appropriate location (e.g., sediment characterization and disposal to an appropriate landfill).
- Remove standing water from basin within 96 hours after accumulation.
- If the basin does not drain adequately (e.g., due to storms that are more frequent or larger than the design storm or other unforeseen site conditions), dewatering should be conducted in accordance with appropriate dewatering BMPs (see NS-2) and in accordance with local permits as applicable.
- To minimize vector production:
  - Remove accumulation of live and dead floating vegetation in basins during every inspection.
  - Remove excessive emergent and perimeter vegetation as needed or as advised by local or state vector control agencies.

## References

A Current Assessment of Urban Best Management Practices: Techniques for Reducing Nonpoint Source Pollution in the Coastal Zones, Metropolitan Washington Council of Governments, March 1992.

Draft-Sedimentation and Erosion Control, an Inventory of Current Practices, USEPA. April 1990.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Erosion and Sediment Control, Surface Mining in the Eastern U.S., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, Washington, D.C., 1976.

Fifield, J.S. Designing for Effective Sediment and Erosion Control on Construction Sites. Forester Press, Santa Barbara, CA. 2004.

Goldman S.J., Jackson K. and Bursztynsky T.A. Erosion and Sediment Control Handbook. McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1986.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters. EPA 840-B-9-002. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1993.

Guidelines for the Design and Construction of Small Embankment Dams, Division of Safety of Dams, California Department of Water Resources, March 1986.

Haan C.T., Barfield B.J. and Hayes J.C. Design Hydrology and Sedimentology for Small Catchments. Academic Press. 1994.

Inlet/Outlet Alternatives for Extended Detention Basins. State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), 2001.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

McLean, J., 2000. Mosquitoes in Constructed Wetlands: A Management Bugaboo? In T.R. Schueler and H.K. Holland [eds.], The Practice of Watershed Protection. pp. 29-33. Center for Watershed Protection, Ellicott City, MD, 2000.

Metzger, M.E., D. F. Messer, C. L. Beitia, C. M. Myers, and V. L. Kramer. The Dark Side of Stormwater Runoff Management: Disease Vectors Associated with Structural BMPs, 2002.

National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, United States Environmental Protection Agency, 2002.

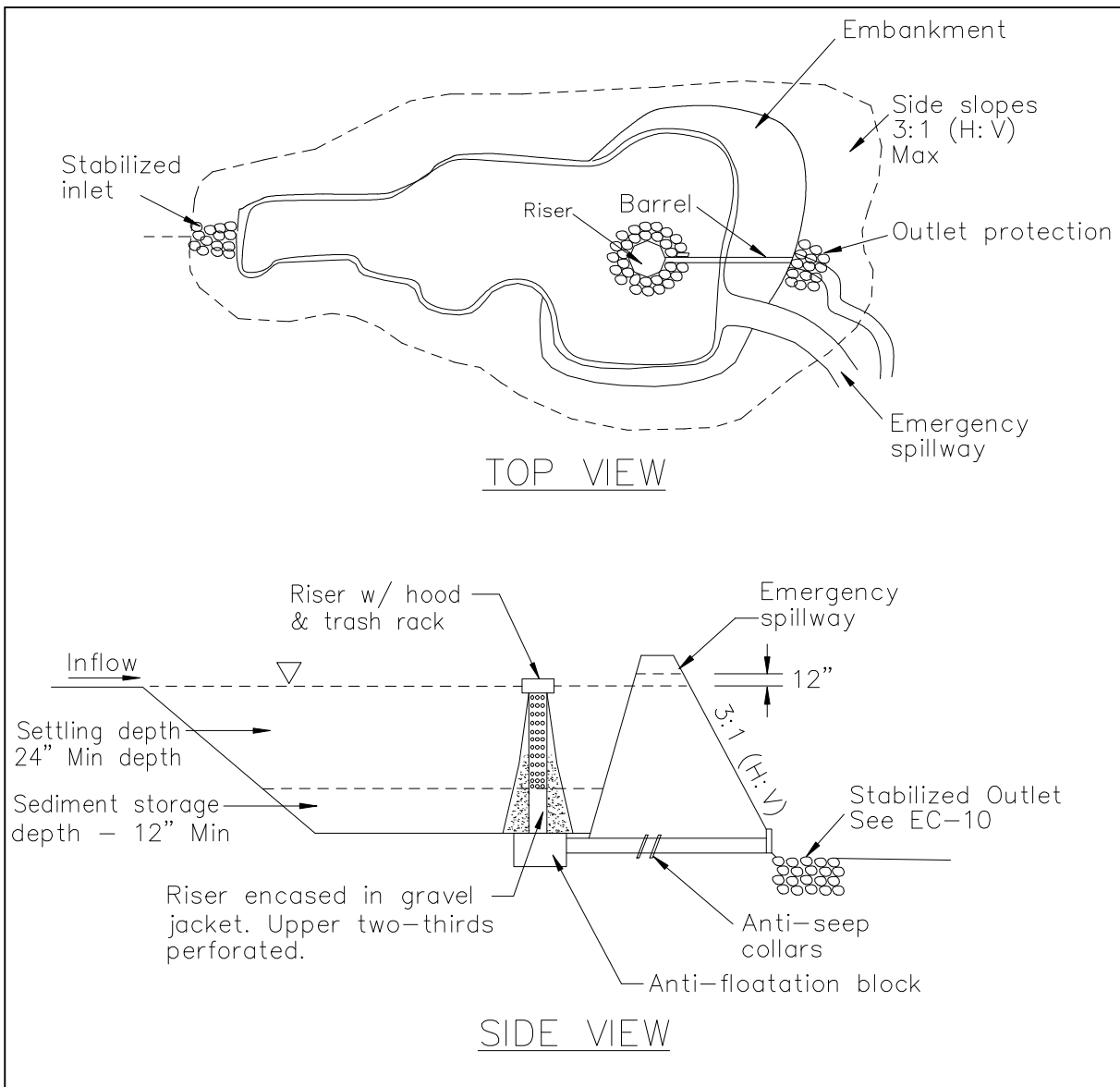
Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Water, Work Group-Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

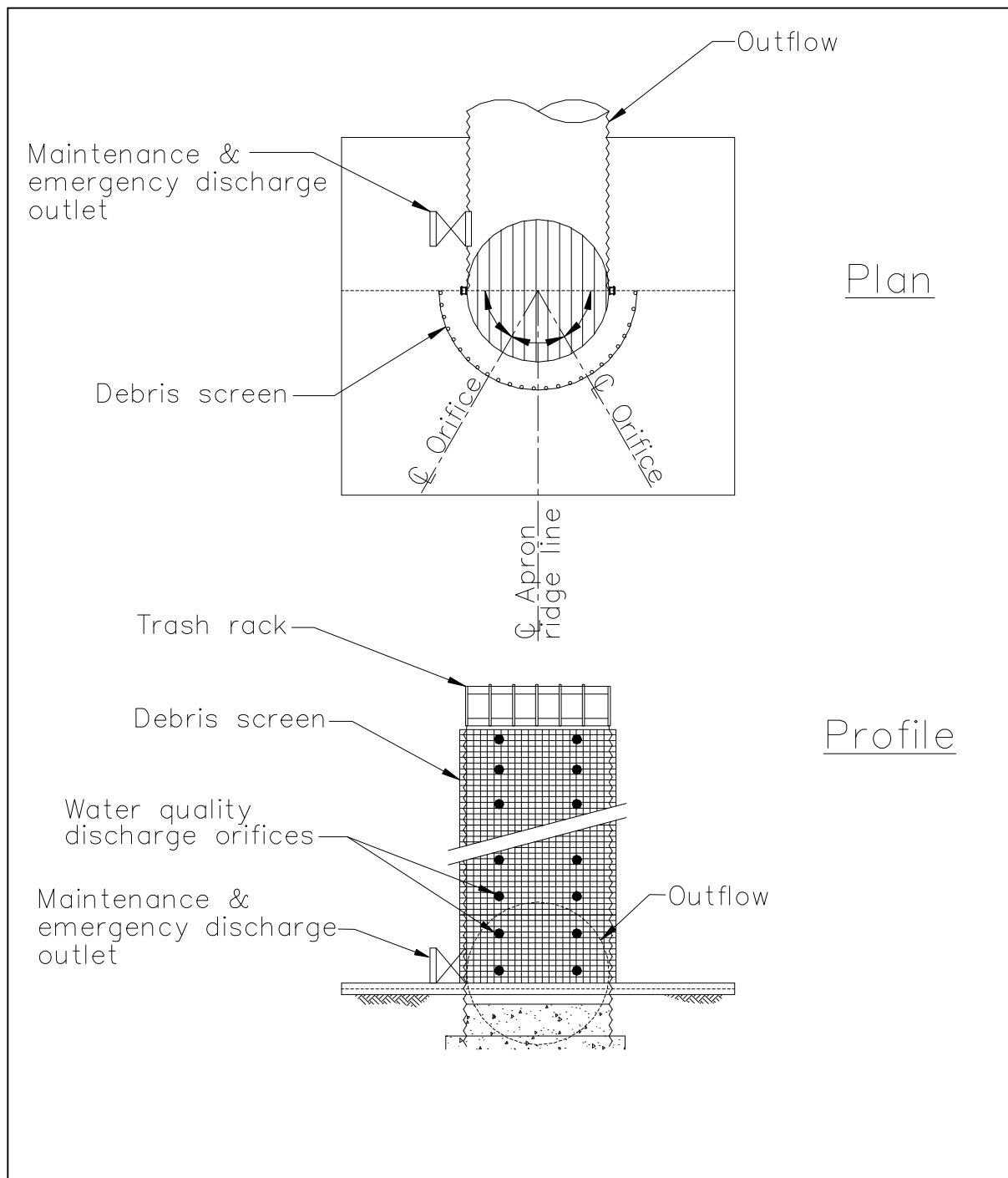
Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

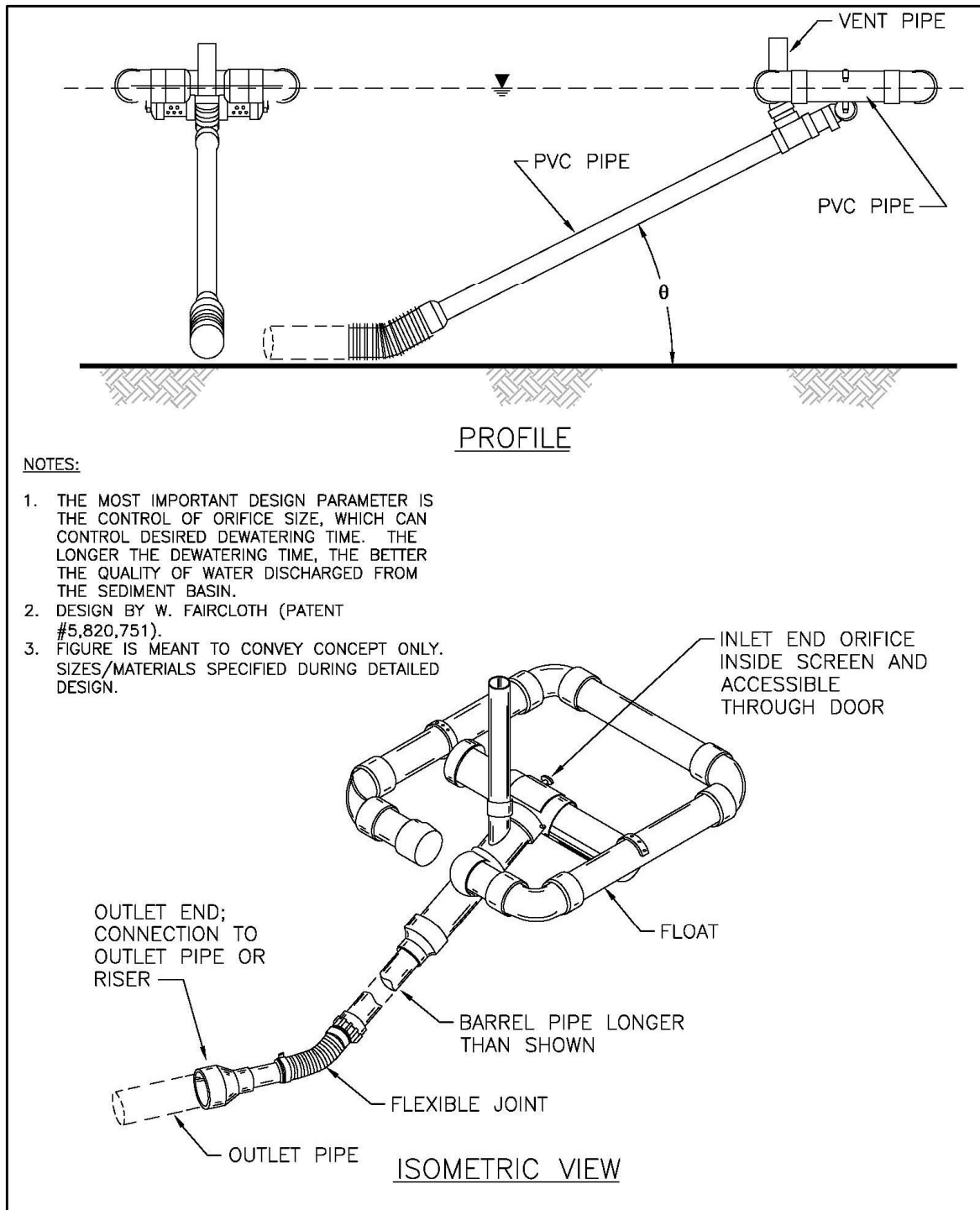
Young, G.K. and Graziano, F., Outlet Hydraulics of Extended Detention Facilities for Northern Virginia Planning District Commission, 1989.



**FIGURE 1: TYPICAL TEMPORARY SEDIMENT BASIN**  
**MULTIPLE ORIFICE DESIGN**  
 NOT TO SCALE

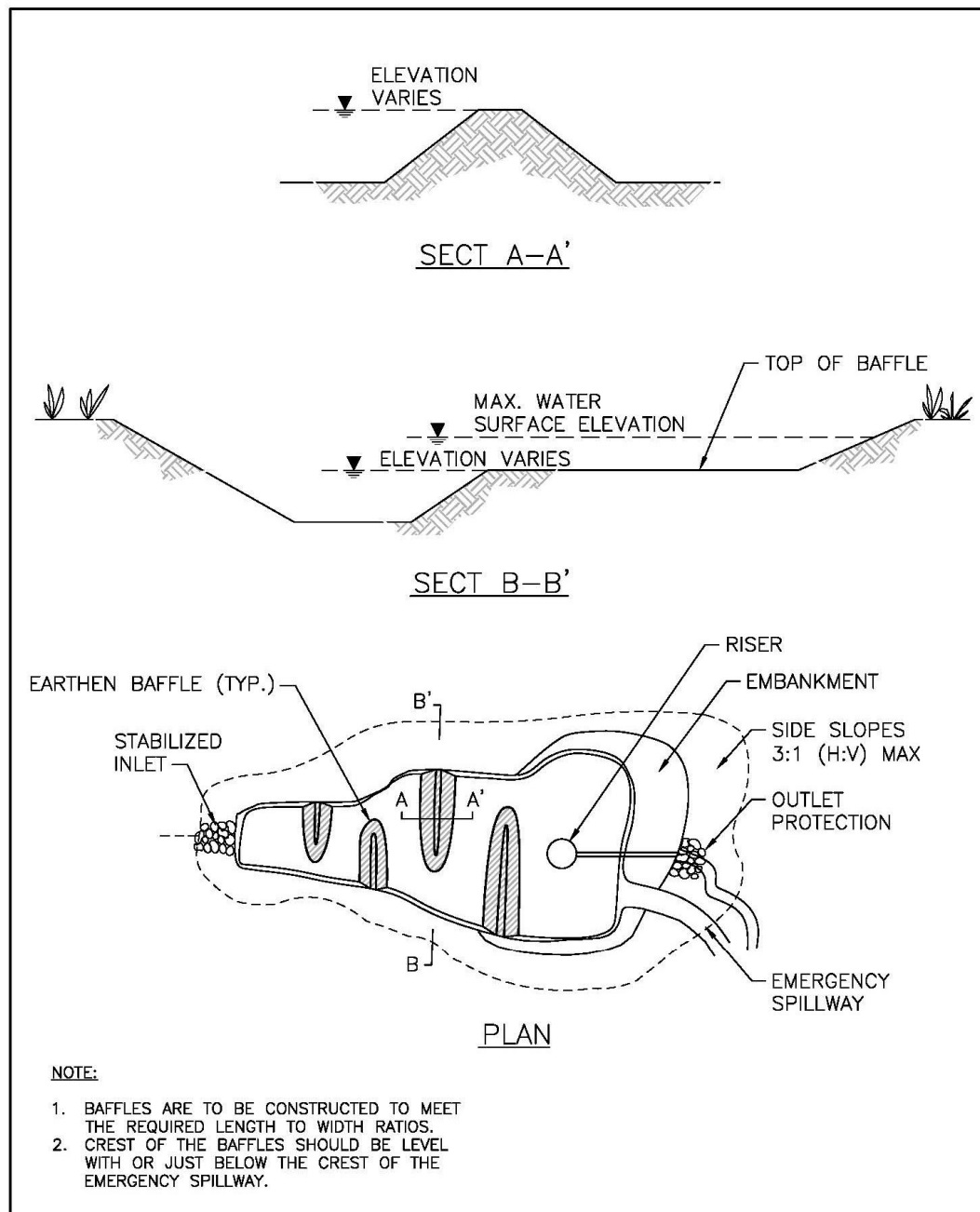


**FIGURE 2: MULTIPLE ORIFICE OUTLET RISER**  
NOT TO SCALE

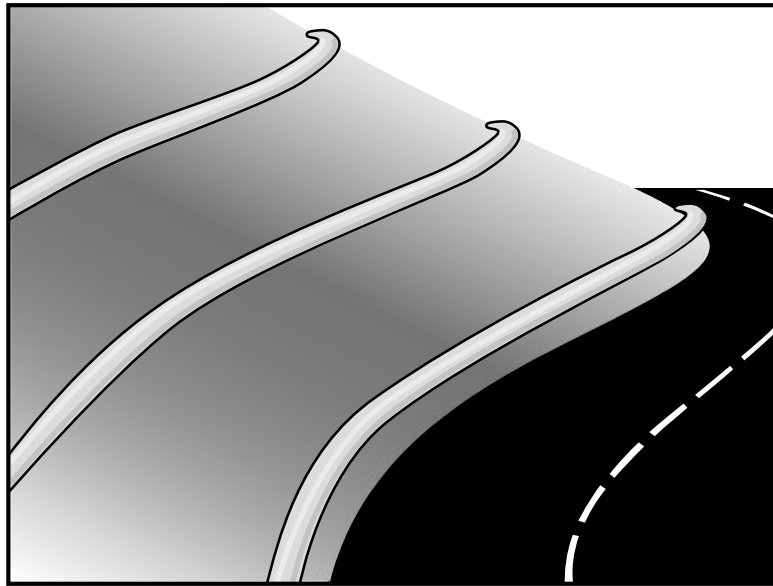


**FIGURE 3: TYPICAL SKIMMER**  
NOT TO SCALE





**FIGURE 4: TYPICAL TEMPORARY SEDIMENT BASIN  
WITH BAFFLES  
NOT TO SCALE**



## Description and Purpose

A fiber roll (also known as wattles or logs) consists of straw, coir, curled wood fiber, or other biodegradable materials bound into a tight tubular roll wrapped by plastic netting, which can be photodegradable, or natural fiber, such as jute, cotton, or sisal. Additionally, gravel core fiber rolls are available, which contain an imbedded ballast material such as gravel or sand for additional weight when staking the rolls are not feasible (such as use as inlet protection). When fiber rolls are placed at the toe and on the face of slopes along the contours, they intercept runoff, reduce its flow velocity, release the runoff as sheet flow, and provide removal of sediment from the runoff (through sedimentation). By interrupting the length of a slope, fiber rolls can also reduce sheet and rill erosion until vegetation is established.

## Suitable Applications

Fiber rolls may be suitable:

- Along the toe, top, face, and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow.
- At the end of a downward slope where it transitions to a steeper slope.
- Along the perimeter of a project.
- As check dams in unlined ditches with minimal grade.
- Down-slope of exposed soil areas.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- SE-1 Silt Fence
- SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-8 Sandbag Barrier
- SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls
- SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- At operational storm drains as a form of inlet protection.
- Around temporary stockpiles.

## **Limitations**

- Fiber rolls should be used in conjunction with erosion control, such as hydroseed, RECPs, etc.
- Only biodegradable fiber rolls containing no plastic can remain on a site applying for a Notice of Termination due to plastic pollution and wildlife concerns (State Water Board, 2016). Fiber rolls containing plastic that are used on a site must be disposed of for final stabilization.
- Fiber rolls are not effective unless trenched in and staked. If not properly staked and trenched in, fiber rolls will not work as intended and could be transported by high flows.
- Not intended for use in high flow situations (i.e., for concentrated flows).
- Difficult to move once saturated.
- Fiber rolls have a limited sediment capture zone.
- Fiber rolls should not be used on slopes subject to creep, slumping, or landslide.
- Rolls typically function for 12-24 months, depending upon local conditions and roll material.

## **Implementation**

### ***Fiber Roll Materials***

- Fiber rolls should be prefabricated.
- Fiber rolls may come manufactured containing polyacrylamide (PAM), a flocculating agent within the roll. Fiber rolls impregnated with PAM provide additional sediment removal capabilities and should be used in areas with fine, clayey or silty soils to provide additional sediment removal capabilities. Monitoring may be required for these installations.
- Fiber rolls are made from weed-free rice straw, flax, curled wood fiber, or coir bound into a tight tubular roll by netting or natural fiber (see *Limitations* above regarding plastic netting).
- Typical fiber rolls vary in diameter from 6 in. to 20 in. Larger diameter rolls are available as well. The larger the roll, the higher the sediment retention capacity.
- Typical fiber rolls lengths are 4, 10, 20 and 25 ft., although other lengths are likely available.

### ***Installation***

- Locate fiber rolls on level contours spaced as follows:
  - Slope inclination of 4:1 (H:V) or flatter: Fiber rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 20 ft.

- Slope inclination between 4:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Fiber Rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 15 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective).
- Slope inclination 2:1 (H:V) or greater: Fiber Rolls should be placed at a maximum interval of 10 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective).
- Prepare the slope before beginning installation.
- Dig small trenches across the slope on the contour. The trench depth should be  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the thickness of the roll, and the width should equal the roll diameter, in order to provide area to backfill the trench.
- It is critical that rolls are installed perpendicular to water movement, and parallel to the slope contour.
- Start building trenches and installing rolls from the bottom of the slope and work up.
- It is recommended that pilot holes be driven through the fiber roll. Use a straight bar to drive holes through the roll and into the soil for the wooden stakes.
- Turn the ends of the fiber roll up slope to prevent runoff from going around the roll.
- Stake fiber rolls into the trench.
  - Drive stakes at the end of each fiber roll and spaced 4 ft maximum on center.
  - Use wood stakes with a nominal classification of 0.75 by 0.75 in. and minimum length of 24 in.
- If more than one fiber roll is placed in a row, the rolls should be overlapped, not abutted.
- See typical fiber roll installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

## **Removal**

- Fiber rolls can be left in place or removed depending on the type of fiber roll and application (temporary vs. permanent installation). Fiber rolls encased with plastic netting or containing any plastic material will need to be removed from the site for final stabilization. Fiber rolls used in a permanent application are to be encased with a non-plastic material and are left in place. Removal of a fiber roll used in a permanent application can result in greater disturbance; therefore, during the BMP planning phase, the areas where fiber rolls will be used on final slopes, only fiber rolls wrapped in non-plastic material should be selected.
- Temporary installations should only be removed when up gradient areas are stabilized per General Permit requirements, and/or pollutant sources no longer present a hazard. But they should also be removed before vegetation becomes too mature so that the removal process does not disturb more soil and vegetation than is necessary.

## Costs

Material costs for straw fiber rolls range from \$26 - \$38 per 25-ft. roll<sup>1</sup> and curled wood fiber rolls range from \$30 - \$40 per roll<sup>2</sup>.

Material costs for PAM impregnated fiber rolls range between \$9.00-\$12.00 per linear foot, based upon vendor research<sup>1</sup>.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Repair or replace split, torn, unraveling, or slumping fiber rolls.
- If the fiber roll is used as a sediment capture device, or as an erosion control device to maintain sheet flows, sediment that accumulates in the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when sediment accumulation reaches one-third the designated sediment storage depth.
- If fiber rolls are used for erosion control, such as in a check dam, sediment removal should not be required as long as the system continues to control the grade. Sediment control BMPs will likely be required in conjunction with this type of application.
- Repair any rills or gullies promptly.

## References

General Construction – Frequently Asked Questions, Storm Water Program website, State Water Resources Control Board, 2009 updated in 2016. Available online at: [http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water\\_issues/programs/stormwater/gen\\_const\\_faq.shtml](http://www.waterboards.ca.gov/water_issues/programs/stormwater/gen_const_faq.shtml).

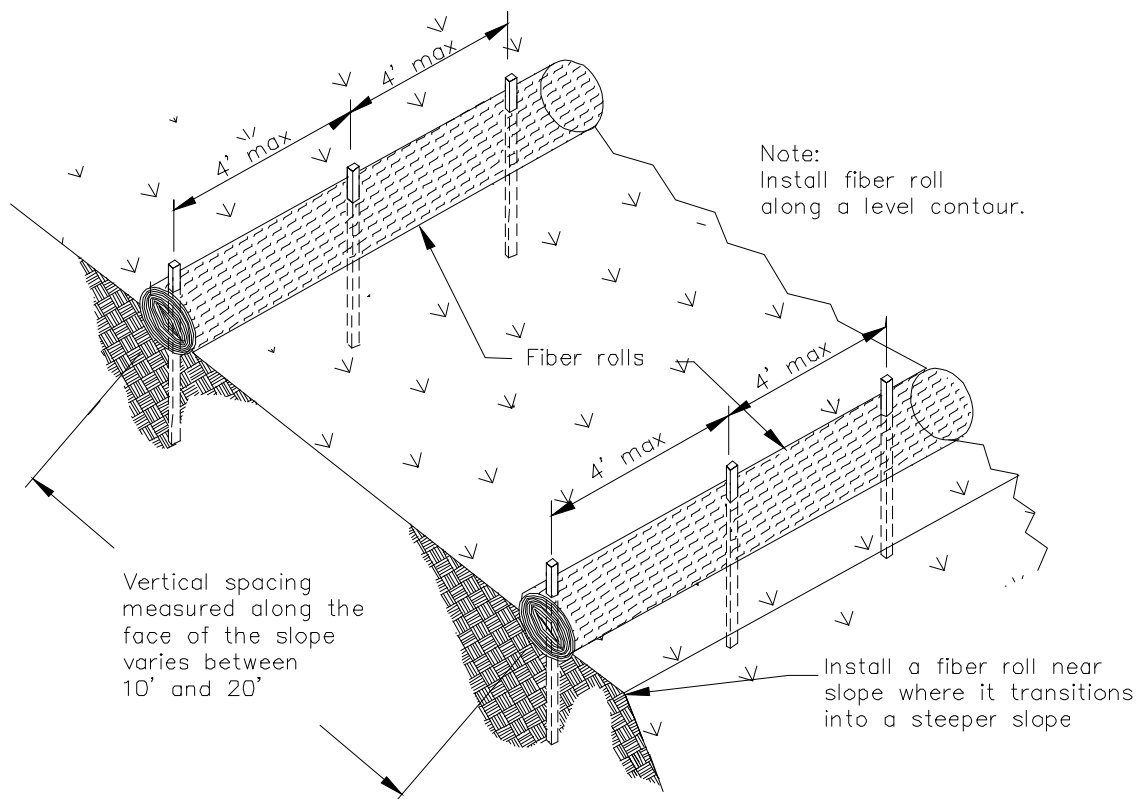
Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.

---

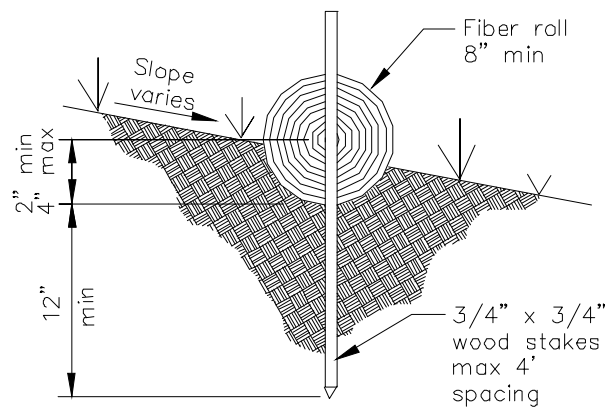
<sup>1</sup> Adjusted for inflation (2016 dollars) by Tetra Tech, Inc.

<sup>2</sup> Costs estimated based on vendor query by Tetra Tech, Inc. 2016.



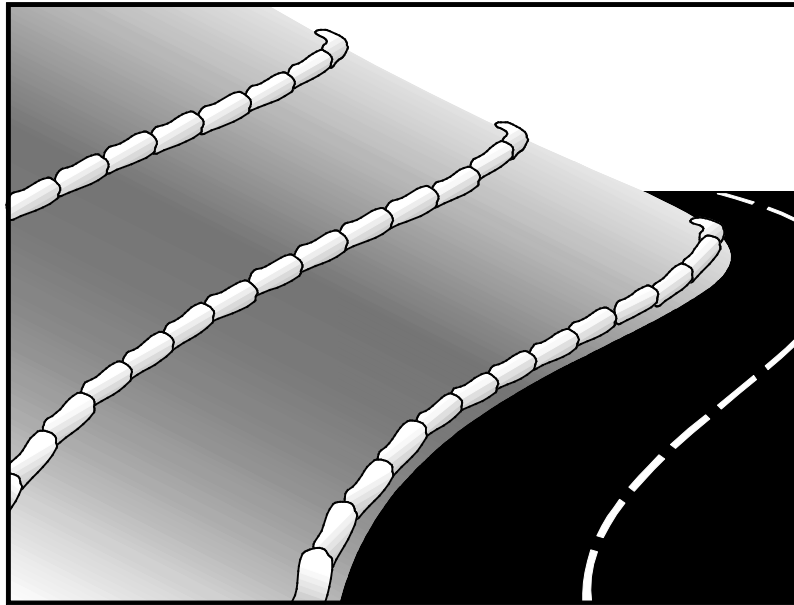
TYPICAL FIBER ROLL INSTALLATION

N.T.S.



ENTRENCHMENT DETAIL

N.T.S.



## Description and Purpose

A gravel bag berm is a series of gravel-filled bags placed on a level contour to intercept sheet flows. Gravel bags pond sheet flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out, and release runoff slowly as sheet flow, preventing erosion.

## Suitable Applications

Gravel bag berms may be suitable:

- As a linear sediment control measure:
  - Below the toe of slopes and erodible slopes
  - As sediment traps at culvert/pipe outlets
  - Below other small cleared areas
  - Along the perimeter of a site
  - Down slope of exposed soil areas
  - Around temporary stockpiles and spoil areas
  - Parallel to a roadway to keep sediment off paved areas
  - Along streams and channels
- As a linear erosion control measure:
  - Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

SE-1 Silt Fence  
 SE-5 Fiber Roll  
 SE-8 Sandbag Barrier  
 SE-12 Temporary Silt Dike  
 SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- At the top of slopes to divert runoff away from disturbed slopes.
- As chevrons (small check dams) across mildly sloped construction roads. For use check dam use in channels, see SE-4, Check Dams.

## Limitations

- Gravel berms may be difficult to remove.
- Removal problems limit their usefulness in landscaped areas.
- Gravel bag berm may not be appropriate for drainage areas greater than 5 acres.
- Runoff will pond upstream of the berm, possibly causing flooding if sufficient space does not exist.
- Degraded gravel bags may rupture when removed, spilling contents.
- Installation can be labor intensive.
- Durability of gravel bags is somewhat limited, and bags may need to be replaced when installation is required for longer than 6 months.
- Easily damaged by construction equipment.
- When used to detain concentrated flows, maintenance requirements increase.

## Implementation

### *General*

A gravel bag berm consists of a row of open graded gravel-filled bags placed on a level contour. When appropriately placed, a gravel bag berm intercepts and slows sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding allows sediment to settle. The open graded gravel in the bags is porous, which allows the ponded runoff to flow slowly through the bags, releasing the runoff as sheet flows. Gravel bag berms also interrupt the slope length and thereby reduce erosion by reducing the tendency of sheet flows to concentrate into rivulets, which erode rills, and ultimately gullies, into disturbed, sloped soils. Gravel bag berms are similar to sand bag barriers but are more porous. Generally, gravel bag berms should be used in conjunction with temporary soil stabilization controls up slope to provide effective erosion and sediment control.

### *Design and Layout*

- Locate gravel bag berms on level contours.
- When used for slope interruption, the following slope/sheet flow length combinations apply:
  - Slope inclination of 4:1 (H:V) or flatter: Gravel bags should be placed at a maximum interval of 20 ft, with the first row near the slope toe.
  - Slope inclination between 4:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Gravel bags should be placed at a maximum interval of 15 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.



Slope inclination 2:1 (H:V) or greater: Gravel bags should be placed at a maximum interval of 10 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.

- Turn the ends of the gravel bag barriers up slope to prevent runoff from going around the berm.
- Allow sufficient space up slope from the gravel bag berm to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.
- For installation near the toe of the slope, gravel bag barriers should be set back from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. Where specific site conditions do not allow for a set-back, the gravel bag barrier may be constructed on the toe of the slope. To prevent flows behind the barrier, bags can be placed perpendicular to a berm to serve as cross barriers.
- Drainage area should not exceed 5 acres.
- In Non-Traffic Areas:
  - Height = 18 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more-layer construction
  - Top width = 12 in. minimum for one- or two-layer construction
  - Side slopes = 2:1 (H:V) or flatter
- In Construction Traffic Areas:
  - Height = 12 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more-layer construction.
  - Top width = 12 in. minimum for one- or two-layer construction.
  - Side slopes = 2:1 (H:V) or flatter.
- Butt ends of bags tightly.
- On multiple row, or multiple layer construction, overlap butt joints of adjacent row and row beneath.
- Use a pyramid approach when stacking bags.

## **Materials**

- **Bag Material:** Bags should be woven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide fabric or burlap, minimum unit weight of 4 ounces/yd<sup>2</sup>, Mullen burst strength exceeding 300 lb/in<sup>2</sup> in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D3786, and ultraviolet stability exceeding 70% in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D4355.

- **Bag Size:** Each gravel-filled bag should have a length of 18 in., width of 12 in., thickness of 3 in., and mass of approximately 33 lbs. Bag dimensions are nominal and may vary based on locally available materials.
- **Fill Material:** Fill material should be 0.5 to 1 in. Crushed rock, clean and free from clay, organic matter, and other deleterious material, or other suitable open graded, non-cohesive, porous gravel.

## Costs

Material costs for gravel bags are average and are dependent upon material availability. \$3.20-\$3.80 per filled gravel bag is standard based upon vendor research (Adjusted for inflation, 2016 dollars, by Tetra Tech, Inc.).

## Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Gravel bags exposed to sunlight will need to be replaced every two to three months due to degrading of the bags.
- Reshape or replace gravel bags as needed.
- Repair washouts or other damage as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates in the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height.
- Remove gravel bag berms when no longer needed and recycle gravel fill whenever possible and properly dispose of bag material. Remove sediment accumulation and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area.

## References

Handbook of Steel Drainage and Highway Construction, American Iron and Steel Institute, 1983.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Stormwater Pollution Plan Handbook, First Edition, State of California, Department of Transportation Division of New Technology, Materials and Research, October 1992.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.



## Description and Purpose

Street sweeping and vacuuming includes use of self-propelled and walk-behind equipment to remove sediment from streets and roadways and to clean paved surfaces in preparation for final paving. Sweeping and vacuuming prevents sediment from the project site from entering storm drains or receiving waters.

## Suitable Applications

Sweeping and vacuuming are suitable anywhere sediment is tracked from the project site onto public or private paved streets and roads, typically at points of egress. Sweeping and vacuuming are also applicable during preparation of paved surfaces for final paving.

## Limitations

- Sweeping and vacuuming may not be effective when sediment is wet or when tracked soil is caked (caked soil may need to be scraped loose).
- Sweeping may be less effective for fine particle soils (i.e., clay).

## Implementation

- Controlling the number of points where vehicles can leave the site will allow sweeping and vacuuming efforts to be focused and perhaps save money.
- Inspect potential sediment tracking locations daily.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Objective**
- ☒ **Secondary Objective**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- Visible sediment tracking should be swept or vacuumed on a daily basis.
- Do not use kick brooms or sweeper attachments. These tend to spread the dirt rather than remove it.
- If not mixed with debris or trash, consider incorporating the removed sediment back into the project

## Costs

Rental rates for self-propelled sweepers vary depending on hopper size and duration of rental. Expect rental rates from \$ 650/day to \$2,500/day<sup>1</sup>, plus operator costs. Hourly production rates vary with the amount of area to be swept and amount of sediment. Match the hopper size to the area and expect sediment load to minimize time spent dumping.

## Inspection and Maintenance

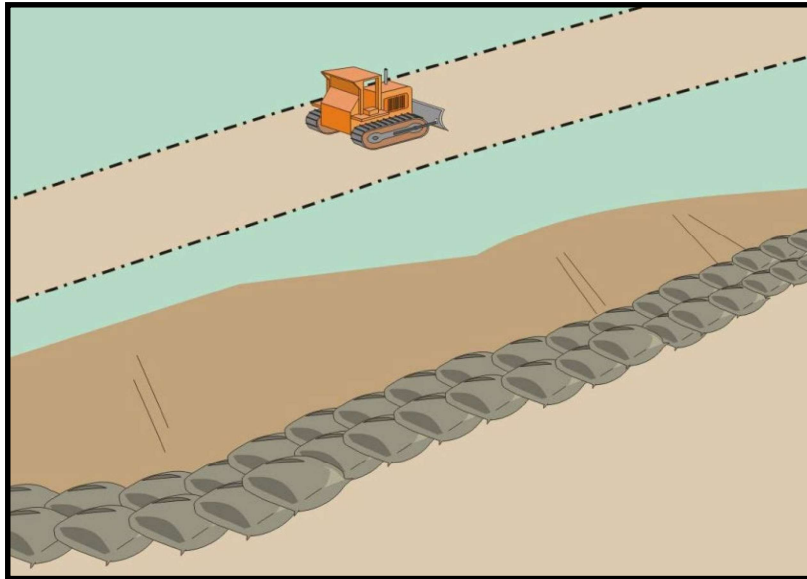
- Inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- When actively in use, points of ingress and egress must be inspected daily.
- When tracked or spilled sediment is observed outside the construction limits, it must be removed at least daily. More frequent removal, even continuous removal, may be required in some jurisdictions.
- Be careful not to sweep up any unknown substance or any object that may be potentially hazardous.
- Adjust brooms frequently; maximize efficiency of sweeping operations.
- After sweeping is finished, properly dispose of sweeper wastes at an approved dumpsite.

## References

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

---

<sup>1</sup> Based on contractor query conducted by Tetra Tech, Inc. November 2016.



## Description and Purpose

A sandbag barrier is a series of sand-filled bags placed on a level contour to intercept or to divert sheet flows. Sandbag barriers placed on a level contour pond sheet flow runoff, allowing sediment to settle out.

## Suitable Applications

Sandbag barriers may be a suitable control measure for the applications described below. It is important to consider that sand bags are less porous than gravel bags and ponding or flooding can occur behind the barrier. Also, sand is easily transported by runoff if bags are damaged or ruptured. The SWPPP Preparer should select the location of a sandbag barrier with respect to the potential for flooding, damage, and the ability to maintain the BMP.

- As a linear sediment control measure:
  - Below the toe of slopes and erodible slopes.
  - As sediment traps at culvert/pipe outlets.
  - Below other small cleared areas.
  - Along the perimeter of a site.
  - Down slope of exposed soil areas.
  - Around temporary stockpiles and spoil areas.
  - Parallel to a roadway to keep sediment off paved areas.
  - Along streams and channels.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**
- ☒ **Secondary Category**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

- SE-1 Silt Fence
- SE-5 Fiber Rolls
- SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-12 Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls
- SE-14 Biofilter Bags

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- As linear erosion control measure:
  - Along the face and at grade breaks of exposed and erodible slopes to shorten slope length and spread runoff as sheet flow.
  - At the top of slopes to divert runoff away from disturbed slopes.
  - As check dams across mildly sloped construction roads.

## Limitations

- It is necessary to limit the drainage area upstream of the barrier to 5 acres.
- Sandbags are not intended to be used as filtration devices.
- Easily damaged by construction equipment.
- Degraded sandbags may rupture when removed, spilling sand.
- Installation can be labor intensive.
- Durability of sandbags is somewhat limited, and bags will need to be replaced when there are signs of damage or wear.
- Burlap should not be used for sandbags.

## Implementation

### *General*

A sandbag barrier consists of a row of sand-filled bags placed on a level contour. When appropriately placed, a sandbag barrier intercepts and slows sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding allows sediment to settle. Sand-filled bags have limited porosity, which is further limited as the fine sand tends to quickly plug with sediment, limiting or completely blocking the rate of flow through the barrier. If a porous barrier is desired, consider SE-1, Silt Fence, SE-5, Fiber Rolls, SE-6, Gravel Bag Berms or SE-14, Biofilter Bags. Sandbag barriers also interrupt the slope length and thereby reduce erosion by reducing the tendency of sheet flows to concentrate into rivulets which erode rills, and ultimately gullies, into disturbed, sloped soils. Sandbag barriers are similar to gravel bag berms, but less porous. Generally, sandbag barriers should be used in conjunction with temporary soil stabilization controls up slope to provide effective erosion and sediment control.

### *Design and Layout*

- Locate sandbag barriers on a level contour.
- When used for slope interruption, the following slope/sheet flow length combinations apply:
  - Slope inclination of 4:1 (H:V) or flatter: Sandbags should be placed at a maximum interval of 20 ft, with the first row near the slope toe.
  - Slope inclination between 4:1 and 2:1 (H:V): Sandbags should be placed at a maximum interval of 15 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.

- Slope inclination 2:1 (H:V) or greater: Sandbags should be placed at a maximum interval of 10 ft. (a closer spacing is more effective), with the first row near the slope toe.
- Turn the ends of the sandbag barrier up slope to prevent runoff from going around the barrier.
- Allow sufficient space up slope from the barrier to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.
- For installation near the toe of the slope, sand bag barriers should be set back from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. Where specific site conditions do not allow for a set-back, the sand bag barrier may be constructed on the toe of the slope. To prevent flows behind the barrier, bags can be placed perpendicular to a berm to serve as cross barriers.
- Drainage area should not exceed 5 acres.
- Butt ends of bags tightly.
- Overlap butt joints of row beneath with each successive row.
- Use a pyramid approach when stacking bags.
- In non-traffic areas
  - Height = 18 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more-layer construction
  - Side slope = 2:1 (H:V) or flatter
- In construction traffic areas
  - Height = 12 in. maximum
  - Top width = 24 in. minimum for three or more-layer construction.
  - Side slopes = 2:1 (H:V) or flatter.
- See typical sandbag barrier installation details at the end of this fact sheet.

## **Materials**

- **Sandbag Material:** Sandbag should be woven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide fabric, minimum unit weight of 4 ounces/yd<sup>2</sup>, Mullen burst strength exceeding 300 lb/in<sup>2</sup> in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D3786, and ultraviolet stability exceeding 70% in conformance with the requirements in ASTM designation D4355. Use of burlap is not an acceptable substitute, as sand can more easily mobilize out of burlap.
- **Sandbag Size:** Each sand-filled bag should have a length of 18 in., width of 12 in., thickness of 3 in., and mass of approximately 33 lbs. Bag dimensions are nominal and may vary based on locally available materials.

- **Fill Material:** All sandbag fill material should be non-cohesive, Class 3 (Caltrans Standard Specification, Section 25) or similar permeable material free from clay and deleterious material, such as recycled concrete or asphalt.

## Costs

Empty sandbags cost \$0.25 - \$0.75. Average cost of fill material is \$8 per yd<sup>3</sup>. Additional labor is required to fill the bags. Pre-filled sandbags are more expensive at \$1.50 - \$2.00 per bag. These costs are based upon vendor research.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Sandbags exposed to sunlight will need to be replaced every two to three months due to degradation of the bags.
- Reshape or replace sandbags as needed.
- Repair washouts or other damage as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates behind the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height.
- Remove sandbags when no longer needed and recycle sand fill whenever possible and properly dispose of bag material. Remove sediment accumulation, and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area.

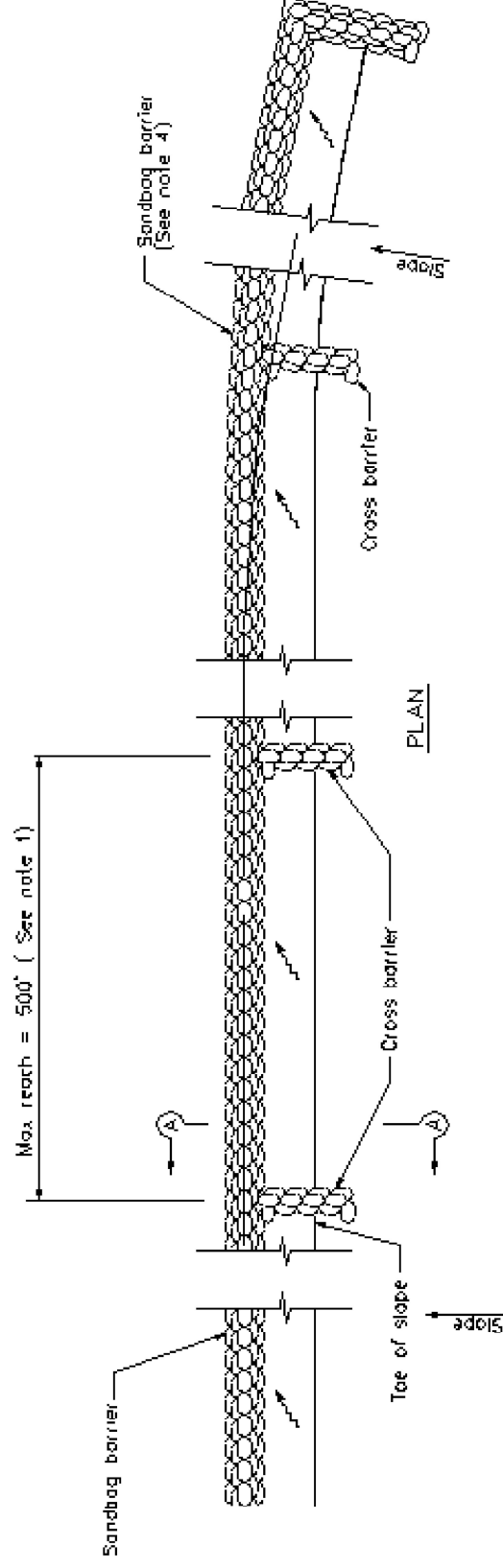
## References

Standard Specifications for Construction of Local Streets and Roads, California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2002.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks - Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

Erosion and Sediment Control Manual, Oregon Department of Environmental Quality, February 2005.

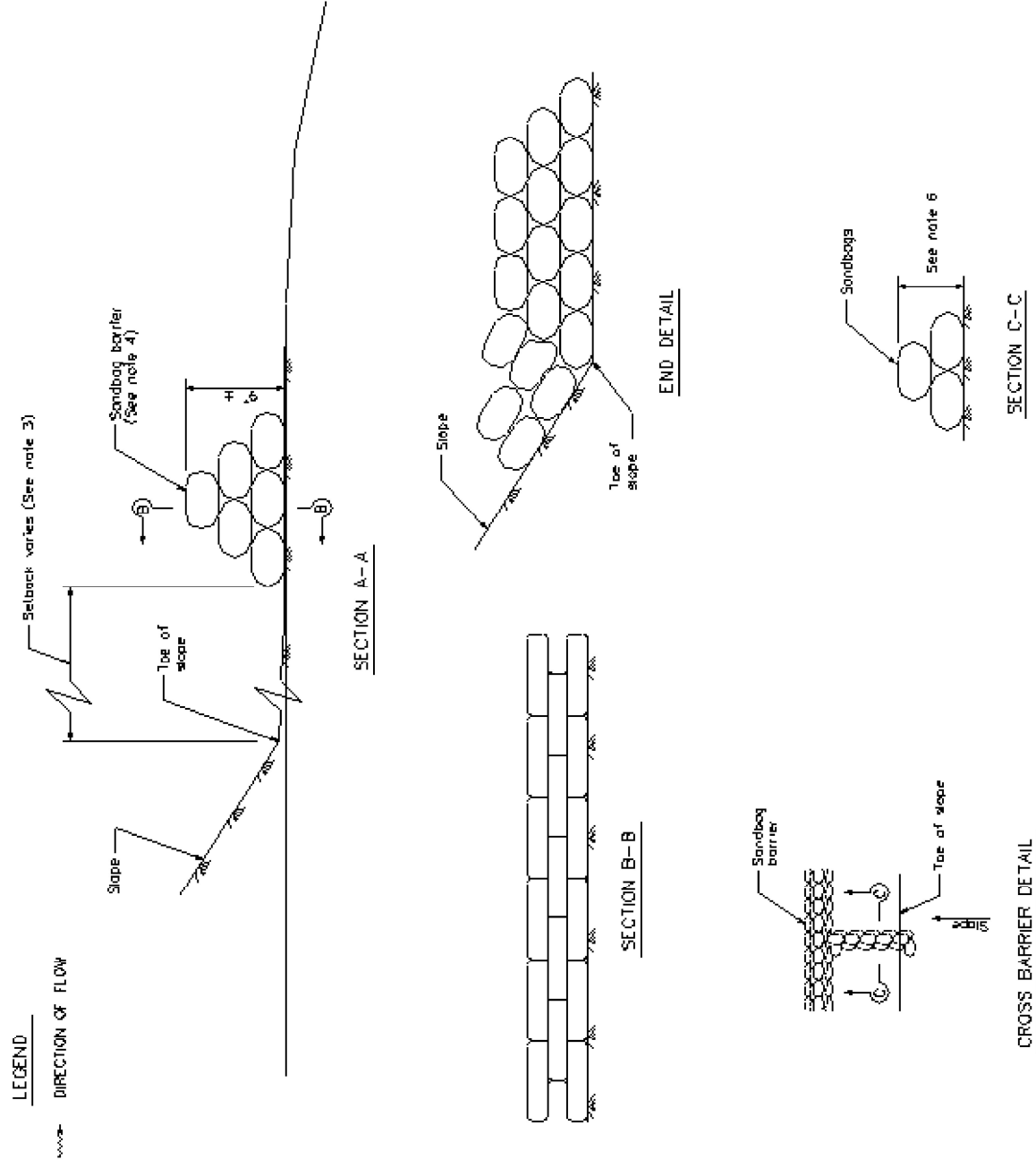




## SANDBAG BARRIER

### NOTES

1. Construct the length of each reach so that the change in base elevation along the reach does not exceed  $1/2$  the height of the linear barrier. In no case shall the reach length exceed 500'.
2. Place sandbags tightly
3. Dimension may vary to fit field condition.
4. Sandbag barrier shall be a minimum of 3 bags high.
5. The end of the barrier shall be turned up slope.
6. Cross barriers shall be a min of  $1/2$  and a max of  $2/3$  the height of the linear barrier.
7. Sandbag rows and layers shall be staggered to eliminate gaps.



# Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls (MLSC)

## SE-12



### Description and Purpose

Manufactured linear sediment controls (MLSC) are pre-manufactured devices that are typically specified and installed for drainage and sediment control on the perimeter of disturbed sites or stockpiles and as check dams within channels. Typically, MLSCs can be reused.

This fact sheet is intended to provide guidance on BMP selection and implementation of proprietary or vendor-supplied products, for sediment control. Products should be evaluated for project-specific implementation and used if determined to be appropriate by the SWPPP Preparer.

### Suitable Applications

MLSCs are generally used in areas as a substitute for fiber rolls and silt fences in sediment control applications to slow down runoff water, divert drainage or contain fines and sediment. MLSCs are a linear control and application suitability varies based on the specific product type. They may be suitable:

- On paved surfaces for perimeter protection.
- As check structures in channels.
- Along the perimeter of disturbed sites in lieu of silt fence.

### Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Category**  
☒ **Secondary Category**

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

### Potential Alternatives

- SE-1 Silt Fence
- SE-5 Fiber Roll
- SE-6 Gravel Bag Berm
- SE-8 Sandbag Barrier

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



# Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls (MLSC)

## SE-12

---

- At operational storm drains as a form of inlet protection.
- Around temporary stockpiles or material/equipment storage areas.
- At the interface between graveled driveways and pavement.
- Along the toe of exposed and erodible slopes.

### Limitations

- Limitations vary by product. Product manufacturer's printed product use instructions should be reviewed by the SWPPP Preparer to determine the project-specific applicability of MLSCs.

### Implementation

#### *General*

When appropriately placed, MLSCs intercept and slow sheet flow runoff, causing temporary ponding. The temporary ponding provides quiescent conditions allowing sediment to settle. The device is porous, which allows the ponded runoff to flow slowly through the device, releasing the runoff as sheet flows. Generally, MLSCs should be used in conjunction with temporary soil stabilization controls up-slope to provide an effective combination of erosion and sediment control.

#### *Design and Layout*

- MLSCs used on soil should be trenched or attached to the ground per manufacturer specifications in a manner that precludes runoff or ponded water from flowing around or under the device.
- MLSCs designed for use on asphalt or concrete may be attached using a variety of methods, including nailing the device to the pavement, or using a high strength adhesive.
- Follow manufacturer written specifications when installing MLSCs.
- Allow sufficient space up-slope from the silt dike to allow ponding, and to provide room for sediment storage.
- For installation near the toe of the slope, MLSCs should be set back 3 feet from the slope toe to facilitate cleaning. Where site conditions do not allow set back, the sediment control may be constructed on the toe of the slope. To prevent flows behind the barrier, sand or gravel bags can be placed perpendicular and between the sediment control and slope to serve as a barrier to parallel flow.
- Drainage area should not exceed 5 acres.

#### *Materials*

- Several manufactured products are available. The following search terms or combination of terms can be used with an internet search engine to find manufactured linear sediment controls:

# Manufactured Linear Sediment Controls (MLSC) SE-12

---

- “silt barrier”
- “reusable silt fence”
- “silt fence alternative” or
- “perimeter sediment control”

## **Costs**

Manufacturers should be contacted directly for current pricing.

## **Inspection and Maintenance**

- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Reshape or replace sections of damaged MLSCs as needed.
- Repair washouts or other damage as needed.
- Sediment that accumulates behind the BMP should be periodically removed in order to maintain BMP effectiveness. Sediment should be removed when the sediment accumulation reaches one-third of the barrier height.
- Remove MLSCs when no longer needed. Remove sediment accumulation and clean, re-grade, and stabilize the area. Removed sediment should be incorporated in the project or disposed of properly.

## **References**

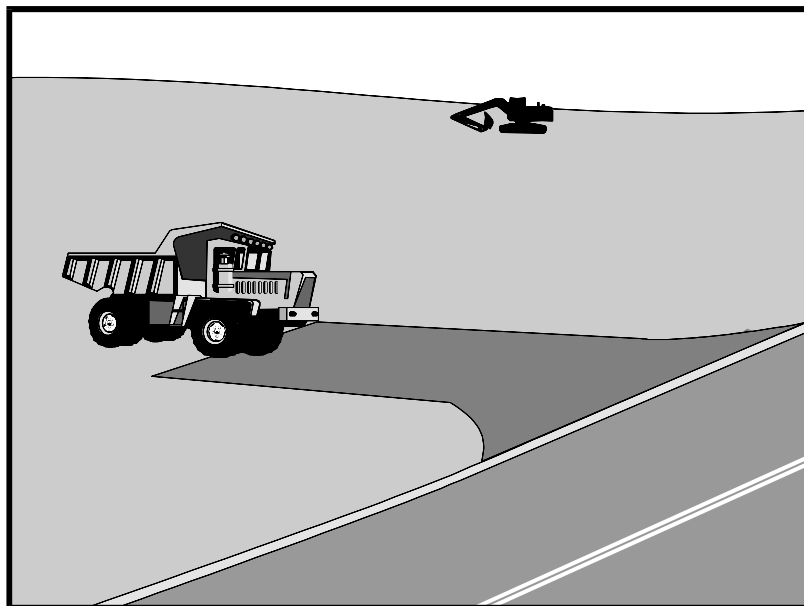
City of Elko Construction Site Best Management Practices Handbook, December 2005.

Construction Site Best Management Practices Handbook, June 2008 Update, Truckee Meadows Regional Stormwater Quality Management Program, June 2008.

Complying with the Edwards Aquifer Rules Technical Guidance on Best Management Practices, Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, Revised July 2005, Addendum Sheet, January 26, 2011.

Stormwater Management Manual for Western Washington Volume II, Construction Stormwater Pollution Prevention, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 2005.

# Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1



## Description and Purpose

A stabilized construction access is defined by a point of entrance/exit to a construction site that is stabilized to reduce the tracking of mud and dirt onto public roads by construction vehicles.

## Suitable Applications

Use at construction sites:

- Where dirt or mud can be tracked onto public roads.
- Adjacent to water bodies.
- Where poor soils are encountered.
- Where dust is a problem during dry weather conditions.

## Limitations

- Entrances and exits require periodic top dressing with additional stones.
- This BMP should be used in conjunction with street sweeping on adjacent public right of way.
- Entrances and exits should be constructed on level ground only.
- Stabilized construction entrances are rather expensive to construct and when a wash rack is included, a sediment trap of some kind must also be provided to collect wash water runoff.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Objective**
- ☒ **Secondary Objective**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



# Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1

---

## Implementation

### *General*

A stabilized construction entrance is a pad of aggregate underlain with filter cloth located at any point where traffic will be entering or leaving a construction site to or from a public right of way, street, alley, sidewalk, or parking area. The purpose of a stabilized construction entrance is to reduce or eliminate the tracking of sediment onto public rights of way or streets. Reducing tracking of sediments and other pollutants onto paved roads helps prevent deposition of sediments into local storm drains and production of airborne dust.

Where traffic will be entering or leaving the construction site, a stabilized construction entrance should be used. NPDES permits require that appropriate measures be implemented to prevent tracking of sediments onto paved roadways, where a significant source of sediments is derived from mud and dirt carried out from unpaved roads and construction sites.

Stabilized construction entrances are moderately effective in removing sediment from equipment leaving a construction site. The entrance should be built on level ground. Advantages of the Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit is that it does remove some sediment from equipment and serves to channel construction traffic in and out of the site at specified locations. Efficiency is greatly increased when a washing rack is included as part of a stabilized construction entrance/exit.

### *Design and Layout*

- Construct on level ground where possible.
- Select 3 to 6 in. diameter stones.
- Use minimum depth of stones of 12 in. or as recommended by soils engineer.
- Construct length of 50 ft or maximum site will allow, and 10 ft minimum width or to accommodate traffic.
- Rumble racks constructed of steel panels with ridges and installed in the stabilized entrance/exit will help remove additional sediment and to keep adjacent streets clean.
- Provide ample turning radii as part of the entrance.
- Limit the points of entrance/exit to the construction site.
- Limit speed of vehicles to control dust.
- Properly grade each construction entrance/exit to prevent runoff from leaving the construction site.
- Route runoff from stabilized entrances/exits through a sediment trapping device before discharge.
- Design stabilized entrance/exit to support heaviest vehicles and equipment that will use it.

# Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1

---

- Select construction access stabilization (aggregate, asphaltic concrete, concrete) based on longevity, required performance, and site conditions. Do not use asphalt concrete (AC) grindings for stabilized construction access/roadway.
- If aggregate is selected, place crushed aggregate over geotextile fabric to at least 12 in. depth, or place aggregate to a depth recommended by a geotechnical engineer. A crushed aggregate greater than 3 in. but smaller than 6 in. should be used.
- Designate combination or single purpose entrances and exits to the construction site.
- Require that all employees, subcontractors, and suppliers utilize the stabilized construction access.
- Implement SE-7, Street Sweeping and Vacuuming, as needed.
- All exit locations intended to be used for more than a two-week period should have stabilized construction entrance/exit BMPs.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMPs are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Inspect local roads adjacent to the site daily. Sweep or vacuum to remove visible accumulated sediment.
- Remove aggregate, separate and dispose of sediment if construction entrance/exit is clogged with sediment.
- Keep all temporary roadway ditches clear.
- Check for damage and repair as needed.
- Replace gravel material when surface voids are visible.
- Remove all sediment deposited on paved roadways within 24 hours.
- Remove gravel and filter fabric at completion of construction

## Costs

Average annual cost for installation and maintenance may vary from \$1,500 to \$6,100 each, averaging \$3,100 per entrance. Costs will increase with addition of washing rack and sediment trap. With wash rack, costs range from \$1,500 - \$7,700 each, averaging \$4,600 per entrance (All costs adjusted for inflation, 2016 dollars, by Tetra Tech Inc.

## References

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.



# **Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1**

---

National Management Measures to Control Nonpoint Source Pollution from Urban Areas, USEPA Agency, 2002.

Proposed Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Sources of Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, Work Group Working Paper, USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

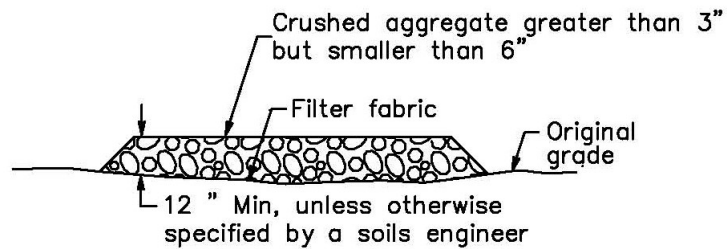
Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Virginia Erosion and Sedimentation Control Handbook, Virginia Department of Conservation and Recreation, Division of Soil and Water Conservation, 1991.

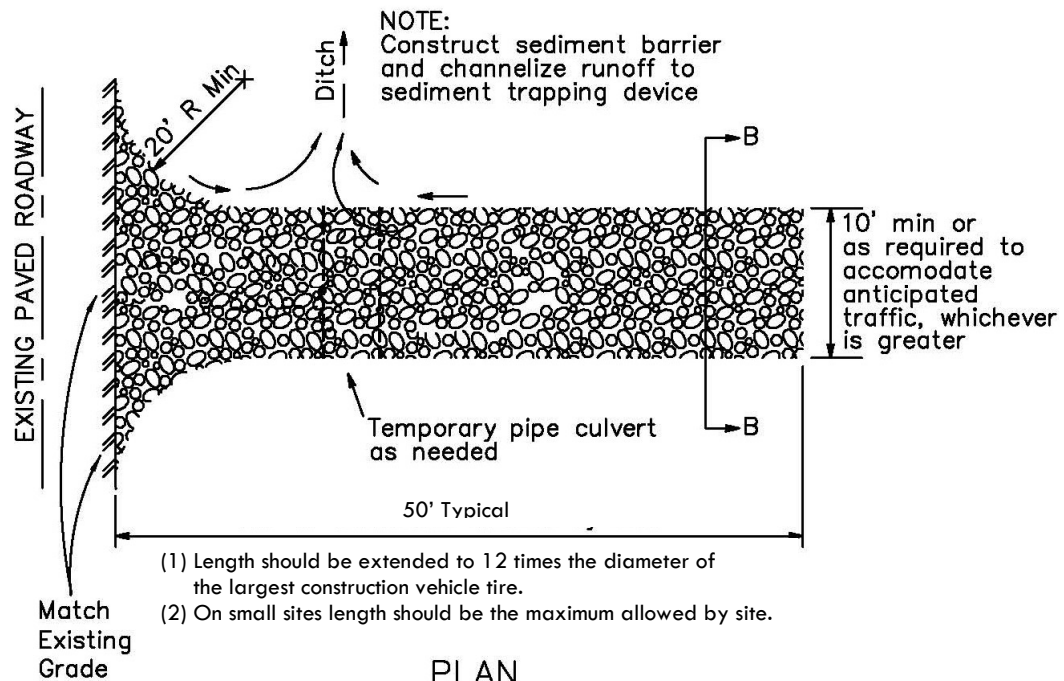
Guidance Specifying Management Measures for Nonpoint Pollution in Coastal Waters, EPA 840-B-9-002, USEPA, Office of Water, Washington, DC, 1993.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.

# Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1

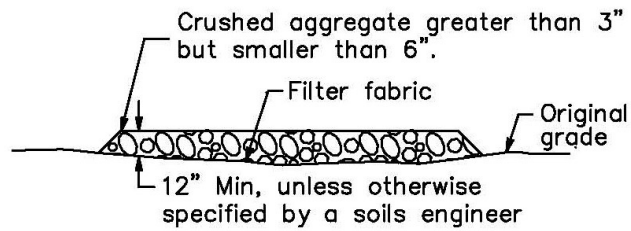


SECTION B-B  
NTS

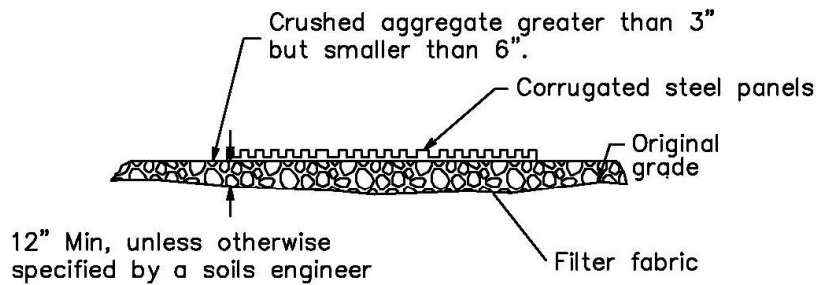


PLAN  
NTS

# Stabilized Construction Entrance/Exit TC-1

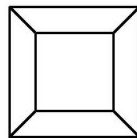


SECTION B-B  
NTS

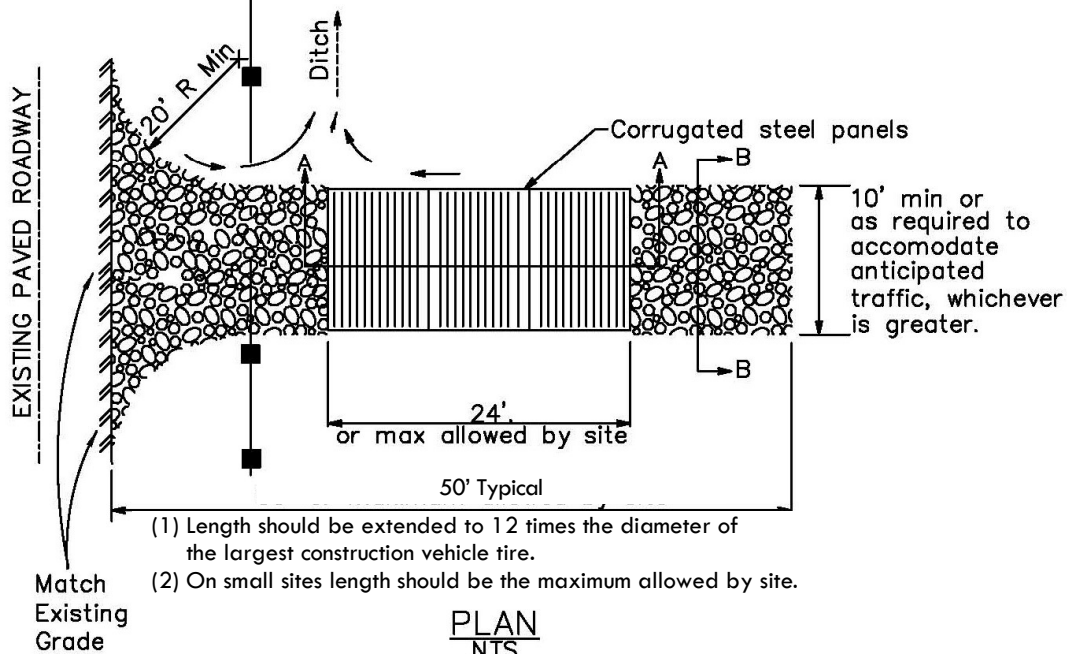


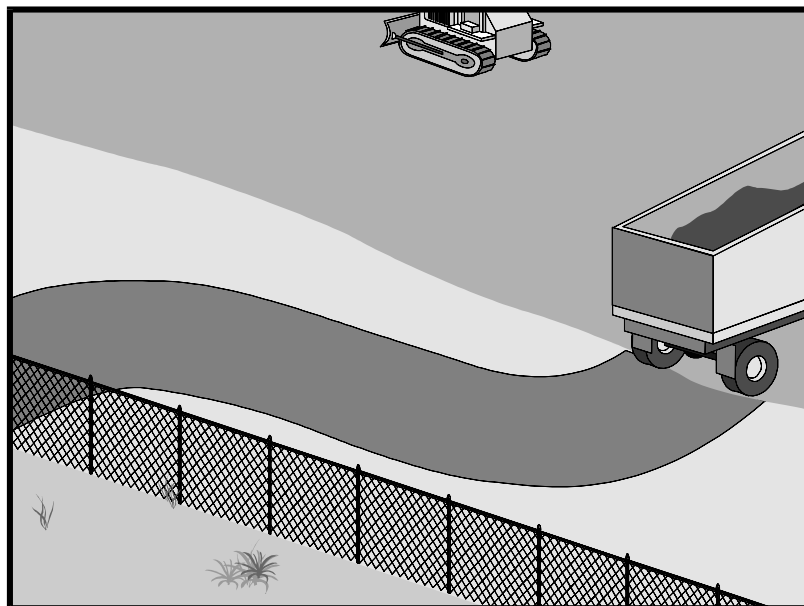
SECTION A-A  
NOT TO SCALE

NOTE:  
Construct sediment barrier and channelize runoff to sediment trapping device



Sediment trapping device





## Description and Purpose

Access roads, subdivision roads, parking areas, and other onsite vehicle transportation routes should be stabilized immediately after grading, and frequently maintained to prevent erosion and control dust.

## Suitable Applications

This BMP should be applied for the following conditions:

- Temporary Construction Traffic:
  - Phased construction projects and offsite road access
  - Construction during wet weather
- Construction roadways and detour roads:
  - Where mud tracking is a problem during wet weather
  - Where dust is a problem during dry weather
  - Adjacent to water bodies
  - Where poor soils are encountered

## Limitations

- The roadway must be removed or paved when construction is complete.

## Categories

EC	Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
WE	Wind Erosion Control	
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

## Legend:

- ☒ **Primary Objective**
- ☒ **Secondary Objective**

## Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

## Potential Alternatives

None

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.



- Certain chemical stabilization methods may cause stormwater or soil pollution and should not be used. See WE-1, Wind Erosion Control.
- Management of construction traffic is subject to air quality control measures. Contact the local air quality management agency.
- Materials will likely need to be removed prior to final project grading and stabilization.
- Use of this BMP may not be applicable to very short duration projects.

## Implementation

### *General*

Areas that are graded for construction vehicle transport and parking purposes are especially susceptible to erosion and dust. The exposed soil surface is continually disturbed, leaving no opportunity for vegetative stabilization. Such areas also tend to collect and transport runoff waters along their surfaces. During wet weather, they often become muddy quagmires that generate significant quantities of sediment that may pollute nearby streams or be transported offsite on the wheels of construction vehicles. Dirt roads can become so unstable during wet weather that they are virtually unusable.

Efficient construction road stabilization not only reduces onsite erosion but also can significantly speed onsite work, avoid instances of immobilized machinery and delivery vehicles, and generally improve site efficiency and working conditions during adverse weather

### *Installation/Application Criteria*

Permanent roads and parking areas should be paved as soon as possible after grading. As an alternative where construction will be phased, the early application of gravel or chemical stabilization may solve potential erosion and stability problems. Temporary gravel roadway should be considered during the rainy season and on slopes greater than 5%.

Temporary roads should follow the contour of the natural terrain to the maximum extent possible. Slope should not exceed 15%. Roadways should be carefully graded to drain transversely. Provide drainage swales on each side of the roadway in the case of a crowned section or one side in the case of a super elevated section. Simple gravel berms without a trench can also be used.

Installed inlets should be protected to prevent sediment laden water from entering the storm sewer system (SE-10, Storm Drain Inlet Protection). In addition, the following criteria should be considered.

- Road should follow topographic contours to reduce erosion of the roadway.
- The roadway slope should not exceed 15%.
- Chemical stabilizers or water are usually required on gravel or dirt roads to prevent dust (WE-1, Wind Erosion Control).
- Properly grade roadway to prevent runoff from leaving the construction site.
- Design stabilized access to support heaviest vehicles and equipment that will use it.

- Stabilize roadway using aggregate, asphalt concrete, or concrete based on longevity, required performance, and site conditions. The use of cold mix asphalt or asphalt concrete (AC) grindings for stabilized construction roadway is not allowed.
- Coordinate materials with those used for stabilized construction entrance/exit points.
- If aggregate is selected, place crushed aggregate over geotextile fabric to at least 12 in. depth. A crushed aggregate greater than 3 in. but smaller than 6 in. should be used.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities. While activities associated with the BMP are under way, inspect BMPs in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Keep all temporary roadway ditches clear.
- When no longer required, remove stabilized construction roadway and re-grade and repair slopes.
- Periodically apply additional aggregate on gravel roads.
- Active dirt construction roads are commonly watered three or more times per day during the dry season.

## Costs

Gravel construction roads are moderately expensive, but cost is often balanced by reductions in construction delay. No additional costs for dust control on construction roads should be required above that needed to meet local air quality requirements.

## References

Blueprint for a Clean Bay: Best Management Practices to Prevent Stormwater Pollution from Construction Related Activities; Santa Clara Valley Nonpoint Source Pollution Control Program, 1995.

Coastal Nonpoint Pollution Control Program; Program Development and Approval Guidance, Working Group, Working Paper; USEPA, April 1992.

Manual of Standards of Erosion and Sediment Control Measures, Association of Bay Area Governments, May 1995.

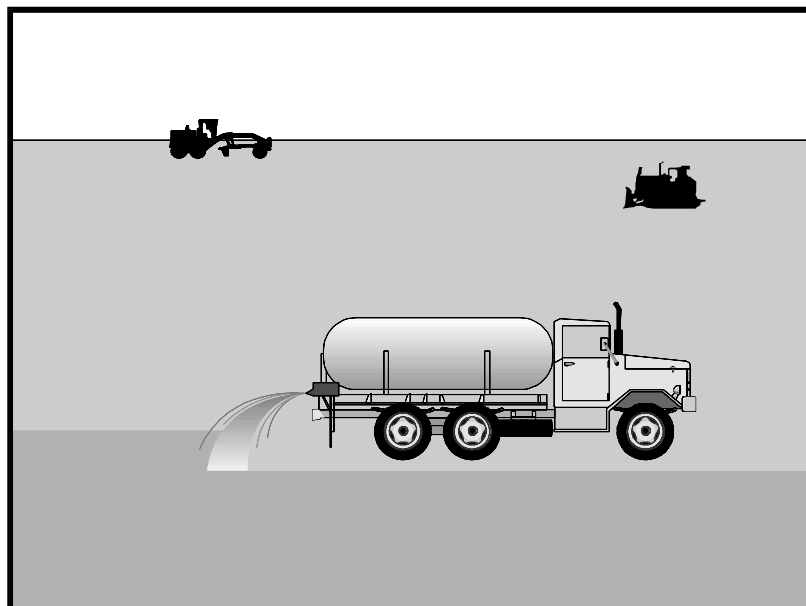
Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), November 2000.

Stormwater Management for Construction Activities, Developing Pollution Prevention Plans and Best Management Practices, EPA 832-R-92005; USEPA, April 1992.

Stormwater Management of the Puget Sound Basin, Technical Manual, Publication #91-75, Washington State Department of Ecology, February 1992.

Virginia Erosion and Sedimentation Control Handbook, Virginia Department of Conservation and Recreation, Division of Soil and Water Conservation, 1991.

Water Quality Management Plan for the Lake Tahoe Region, Volume II, Handbook of Management Practices, Tahoe Regional Planning Agency, November 1988.



## Description and Purpose

Wind erosion or dust control consists of applying water or other chemical dust suppressants as necessary to prevent or alleviate dust nuisance generated by construction activities. Covering small stockpiles or areas is an alternative to applying water or other dust palliatives.

California's Mediterranean climate, with a short "wet" season and a typically long, hot "dry" season, allows the soils to thoroughly dry out. During the dry season, construction activities are at their peak, and disturbed and exposed areas are increasingly subject to wind erosion, sediment tracking, and dust generated by construction equipment. Site conditions and climate can make dust control more of an erosion problem than water-based erosion. Additionally, many local agencies, including Air Quality Management Districts, require dust control and/or dust control permits in order to comply with local nuisance laws, opacity laws (visibility impairment) and the requirements of the Clean Air Act. Wind erosion control is required to be implemented at all construction sites greater than 1 acre by the General Permit.

## Suitable Applications

Most BMPs that provide protection against water-based erosion will also protect against wind-based erosion and dust control requirements required by other agencies will generally meet wind erosion control requirements for water quality protection. Wind erosion control BMPs are suitable during the following construction activities:

### Categories

EC	Erosion Control	
SE	Sediment Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
TC	Tracking Control	
WE	Wind Erosion Control	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
NS	Non-Stormwater Management Control	
WM	Waste Management and Materials Pollution Control	

### Legend:

- ☒ Primary Category
- ☒ Secondary Category

### Targeted Constituents

Sediment	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Nutrients	
Trash	
Metals	
Bacteria	
Oil and Grease	
Organics	

### Potential Alternatives

EC-5 Soil Binders

If User/Subscriber modifies this fact sheet in any way, the CASQA name/logo and footer below must be removed from each page and not appear on the modified version.





- Construction vehicle traffic on unpaved roads
- Drilling and blasting activities
- Soils and debris storage piles
- Batch drop from front-end loaders
- Areas with unstabilized soil
- Final grading/site stabilization

## Limitations

- Watering prevents dust only for a short period (generally less than a few hours) and should be applied daily (or more often) to be effective.
- Over watering may cause erosion and track-out.
- Oil or oil-treated subgrade should not be used for dust control because the oil may migrate into drainageways and/or seep into the soil.
- Chemical dust suppression agents may have potential environmental impacts. Selected chemical dust control agents should be environmentally benign.
- Effectiveness of controls depends on soil, temperature, humidity, wind velocity and traffic.
- Chemical dust suppression agents should not be used within 100 feet of wetlands or water bodies.
- Chemically treated subgrades may make the soil water repellant, interfering with long-term infiltration and the vegetation/re-vegetation of the site. Some chemical dust suppressants may be subject to freezing and may contain solvents and should be handled properly.
- In compacted areas, watering and other liquid dust control measures may wash sediment or other constituents into the drainage system.
- If the soil surface has minimal natural moisture, the affected area may need to be pre-wetted so that chemical dust control agents can uniformly penetrate the soil surface.

## Implementation

### *Dust Control Practices*

Dust control BMPs generally stabilize exposed surfaces and minimize activities that suspend or track dust particles. The following table presents dust control practices that can be applied to varying site conditions that could potentially cause dust. For heavily traveled and disturbed areas, wet suppression (watering), chemical dust suppression, gravel asphalt surfacing, temporary gravel construction entrances, equipment wash-out areas, and haul truck covers can be employed as dust control applications. Permanent or temporary vegetation and mulching can be employed for areas of occasional or no construction traffic. Preventive measures include minimizing surface areas to be disturbed, limiting onsite vehicle traffic to 15 mph or less, and controlling the number and activity of vehicles on a site at any given time.

Chemical dust suppressants include: mulch and fiber based dust palliatives (e.g. paper mulch with gypsum binder), salts and brines (e.g. calcium chloride, magnesium chloride), non-petroleum based organics (e.g. vegetable oil, lignosulfonate), petroleum based organics (e.g. asphalt emulsion, dust oils, petroleum resins), synthetic polymers (e.g. polyvinyl acetate, vinyl, acrylic), clay additives (e.g. bentonite, montmorillonite) and electrochemical products (e.g. enzymes, ionic products).

Site Condition	Dust Control Practices							
	Permanent Vegetation	Mulching	Wet Suppression (Watering)	Chemical Dust Suppression	Gravel or Asphalt	Temporary Gravel Construction Entrances/Equipment Wash Down	Synthetic Covers	Minimize Extent of Disturbed Area
Disturbed Areas not Subject to Traffic	X	X	X	X	X			X
Disturbed Areas Subject to Traffic			X	X	X	X		X
Material Stockpiles		X	X	X			X	X
Demolition			X			X	X	
Clearing/Excavation			X	X				X
Truck Traffic on Unpaved Roads			X	X	X	X	X	
Tracking					X	X		

Additional preventive measures include:

- Schedule construction activities to minimize exposed area (see EC-1, Scheduling).
- Quickly treat exposed soils using water, mulching, chemical dust suppressants, or stone/gravel layering.
- Identify and stabilize key access points prior to commencement of construction.
- Minimize the impact of dust by anticipating the direction of prevailing winds.
- Restrict construction traffic to stabilized roadways within the project site, as practicable.
- Water should be applied by means of pressure-type distributors or pipelines equipped with a spray system or hoses and nozzles that will ensure even distribution.
- All distribution equipment should be equipped with a positive means of shutoff.
- Unless water is applied by means of pipelines, at least one mobile unit should be available at all times to apply water or dust palliative to the project.
- If reclaimed waste water is used, the sources and discharge must meet California Department of Health Services water reclamation criteria and the Regional Water Quality

Control Board (RWQCB) requirements. Non-potable water should not be conveyed in tanks or drain pipes that will be used to convey potable water and there should be no connection between potable and non-potable supplies. Non-potable tanks, pipes, and other conveyances should be marked, “NON-POTABLE WATER - DO NOT DRINK.”

- Pave or chemically stabilize access points where unpaved traffic surfaces adjoin paved roads.
- Provide covers for haul trucks transporting materials that contribute to dust.
- Provide for rapid clean up of sediments deposited on paved roads. Furnish stabilized construction road entrances and wheel wash areas.
- Stabilize inactive areas of construction sites using temporary vegetation or chemical stabilization methods.

For chemical stabilization, there are many products available for chemically stabilizing gravel roadways and stockpiles. If chemical stabilization is used, the chemicals should not create any adverse effects on stormwater, plant life, or groundwater and should meet all applicable regulatory requirements.

## Costs

Installation costs for water and chemical dust suppression vary based on the method used and the length of effectiveness. Annual costs may be high since some of these measures are effective for only a few hours to a few days.

## Inspection and Maintenance

- Inspect and verify that activity-based BMPs are in place prior to the commencement of associated activities.
- BMPs must be inspected in accordance with General Permit requirements for the associated project type and risk level. It is recommended that at a minimum, BMPs be inspected weekly, prior to forecasted rain events, daily during extended rain events, and after the conclusion of rain events.
- Check areas protected to ensure coverage.
- Most water-based dust control measures require frequent application, often daily or even multiple times per day. Obtain vendor or independent information on longevity of chemical dust suppressants.

## References

Best Management Practices and Erosion Control Manual for Construction Sites, Flood Control District of Maricopa County, Arizona, September 1992.

California Air Pollution Control Laws, California Air Resources Board, updated annually.

Construction Manual, Chapter 4, Section 10, “Dust Control”; Section 17, “Watering”; and Section 18, “Dust Palliative”, California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), July 2001.

Prospects for Attaining the State Ambient Air Quality Standards for Suspended Particulate Matter (PM<sub>10</sub>), Visibility Reducing Particles, Sulfates, Lead, and Hydrogen Sulfide, California Air Resources Board, April 1991.

Stormwater Quality Handbooks Construction Site Best Management Practices (BMPs) Manual, State of California Department of Transportation (Caltrans), March 2003.

---

## **Appendix D**

### Completed Inspections

---

# **Appendix E**

## Inspection Form

**BMP INSPECTION REPORT**

Date and Time of Inspection:			Date Report Written:		
Inspection Type: (circle one)	Weekly <i>Complete</i> <i>Parts I,II,III and VII</i>	Pre-Qualifying Precipitation Event (QPE) <i>Complete</i> <i>Parts I,II,III,IV and VII</i>	During QPE <i>Complete</i> <i>Parts I, II, III, V, and VII</i>	Post-QPE <i>Complete</i> <i>Parts I,II,III,VI and VII</i>	<i>Inactive</i> <i>Project</i> <i>Complete</i> <i>Parts I,II,III and VII</i>

**Part I. General Information****Site Information**

Construction Site Name:

Construction stage and completed activities:			Approximate area of site that is exposed:
Photos Taken:	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes	<input type="checkbox"/> No	Photo Reference IDs:

**Weather**

Estimate storm beginning: (date and time)	Estimate storm duration: (hours)
Estimate time since last storm: (days or hours)	Rain gauge reading and location: (in)

Is a "Qualifying Precipitation Event" predicted or did one occur (i.e., any weather pattern with a 50% chance of 0.5" or more within a 24-hr period when 0.5" has been forecast and continues on subsequent 24-hour periods when 0.25" of precipitation or more is forecast)? (Y/N)

If yes, summarize forecast:

**Exception Documentation (explanation required if inspection could not be conducted). Visual inspections are not required outside of business hours or during dangerous weather conditions such as electrical storms, flooding, and high winds above 40 miles per hour.**

**Inspector Information**

Inspector Name:	Inspector Title:
Inspector Certification:	Date:

**Part II. BMP Observations. Describe deficiencies in Part III.**

Minimum BMPs for Risk Level _____ Sites	Adequately designed, implemented and effective (yes, no, N/A)	Action Required (yes/no)	Action Implemented (Date)
<b>Good Housekeeping for Construction Materials</b>			
Inventory of products (excluding materials designed to be outdoors)			

**Part II. BMP Observations Continued. Describe deficiencies in Part III.**

Minimum BMPs for Risk Level _____ Sites	Adequately designed, implemented and effective (yes, no, N/A)	Action Required (yes/no)	Action Implemented (Date)
Stockpiled construction materials not actively in use are covered and bermed			
Construction materials are minimally exposed to precipitation			
BMPs preventing the off-site tracking of materials are implemented and properly effective			
<b>Good Housekeeping for Landscape Materials</b>			
Stockpiled landscape materials such as mulches and topsoil are contained and covered when not actively in use			
Erodible landscape material has not been applied 2 days before a forecasted rain event or during an event			
Erodible landscape materials are applied at quantities and rates in accordance with manufacturer recommendations			
Bagged erodible landscape materials are stored on pallets and covered			
<b>Good Housekeeping for Air Deposition of Site Materials</b>			
Good housekeeping measures are implemented onsite to control the air deposition of site materials and from site operations			
<b>Erosion Controls</b>			
Wind erosion controls are effectively implemented			



Effective soil cover is provided for disturbed areas inactive (i.e., not scheduled to be disturbed for 14 days) as well as finished slopes, open space, utility backfill, and completed lots			
The use of plastic materials is limited in cases when a more sustainable, environmentally friendly alternative exists.			
<b>Sediment Controls</b>			
Perimeter controls are established and effective at controlling erosion and sediment discharges from the site			
Entrances and exits are stabilized to control erosion and sediment discharges from the site			
Sediment basins are properly maintained			
Inspect immediate access roads prior to forecasted precipitation			
Linear sediment control along toe of slope, face of slope and at grade breaks			
Limit construction activity to and from site to entrances and exits that employ effective controls to prevent offsite tracking			
Ensure all storm, drain inlets and perimeter controls, runoff control BMPs and pollutants controls at entrances and exits are maintained and protected from activities that reduce their effectiveness			
Run-on to the site is effectively managed and directed away from all disturbed areas.			

### Part III. Descriptions of BMP Deficiencies

Deficiency	Repairs Implemented: Note - Repairs must begin within 72 hours of identification and, complete repairs as soon as possible.	
	Start Date	Action
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		

**Part IV. Additional Pre QPE Observations. Note the presence or absence of floating and suspended materials, sheen, discoloration, turbidity, odors, and source(s) of pollutants(s).**

	Yes, No, N/A
Do stormwater storage and containment areas have adequate freeboard? If no, complete Part III.	
Are stormwater storage and containment areas free of leaks? If no, complete Parts III and/or VII and describe below.	
Notes:	

**Part V. Additional During QPE Observations. If BMPs cannot be inspected during inclement weather, list the results of visual inspections at all relevant outfalls, discharge points, and downstream locations. Note odors or visible sheen on the surface of discharges. Complete Part VII (Corrective Actions) as needed.**

Outfall, Discharge Point, or Other Downstream Location	
Location	Description
Location	Description
Location	Description
Location	Description

**Part VI. Additional Post QPE Observations. Visually observe (inspect) stormwater discharges at all discharge locations within 96 hours after each qualifying precipitation event and observe (inspect) the discharge of stored or contained stormwater that is derived from and discharged subsequent to a qualifying precipitation event producing precipitation of ½ inch or more at the time of discharge. Complete Part VII (Corrective Actions) as needed.**

Discharge Location, Storage or Containment Area	Visual Observation

**Part VII. Additional Corrective Actions Required. Identify additional corrective actions not included with BMP Deficiencies (Part III) above. Note if change is required.**

Required Actions	Implementation Date

---

# **Appendix F**

## Weather Reports

---

# Appendix G

## Training Log

## ECP Training Log and Documentation

Topic: (check as appropriate)

- Training Objective: \_\_\_\_\_

Training Length (hours):

[illegible]